

HAMBURGER PHILOLOGISCHE STUDIEN

ISSN 0072-9582

Band 59



HELMUT BUSKE VERLAG HAMBURG

JOHN CHARLES CANEY

Q. 7  
2002

The Modernisation of Somali Vocabulary,  
with Particular Reference  
to the Period from 1972 to the Present



HELMUT BUSKE VERLAG HAMBURG

Thesis submitted for the degree of Doctor of  
Philosophy of the University of London 1981

**CIP-Kurztitelaufnahme der Deutschen Bibliothek**

**Caney, John Charles:**

The modernisation of Somali vocabulary, with  
particular reference to the period from 1972  
to the present / John Charles Caney. - Hamburg :  
Buske, 1984.

(Hamburger philologische Studien ; Bd. 59)

ISBN 3-87118-663-5

NE: GT

ISBN 3-87118-663-5

Alle Rechte vorbehalten

© HELMUT BUSKE VERLAG HAMBURG 1984

Gesamtherstellung: WS Druckerei Werner Schaubruch, Mainz

ABSTRACT

The aim of this thesis is to examine the lexical modernisation of the Somali language, a subject which provides an excellent opportunity to study at first hand the process of accelerated vocabulary expansion. While vocabulary expansion in languages with a long-established written tradition has evolved gradually, allowing time and preference to determine ultimately the acceptance of additions to vocabulary, Somalia has been denied this luxury. Although some vocabulary expansion took place on a limited and informal scale with the introduction in 1943 of radio broadcasts in the Somali language, it was not until 1972 that an official orthography was established - prior to which date no generally accepted written form had existed - and a co-ordinated government programme of vocabulary expansion initiated. It is this new Somali vocabulary which forms the basis of the present study.

This thesis seeks to show how the universal principles of vocabulary expansion relate to the specific manifestation in Somali by considering

- a) the limited number of methods available, with examples taken from a variety of languages
- b) the speed with which such an expansion can be achieved, since only vocabulary needs to be substantially expanded given that the logical framework of all languages is essentially identical and capable of coping with modern thought
- c) the freedom of choice within the limitation of methods, and the way in which it has been exercised in Somali.

To this end, an examination has been made of the specific methods of vocabulary expansion adopted by the Somali language planners in the creation of a modern vocabulary and incorporated within this examination is a detailed analysis of selected modern Somali vocabulary drawn from available sources, including the Somali press, school text-books and selected extracts from Somali radio broadcasts.

I wish to express my sincere thanks to Jaalle Maxamed Cabdillaahi Riiraash of the Curriculum Office of the Somali Ministry of Education, latterly engaged upon post-graduate studies at the University of London, who kindly read through and checked the examples of modern Somali vocabulary contained in this work.

"Pour saisir le monde aujourd'hui, nous usons d'un langage qui fut établi pour le monde d'hier. Et la vie du passé nous semble mieux répondre à notre nature, pour la seule raison qu'elle répond mieux à notre langage."

Antoine de St. Exupéry  
"Terre des Hommes"

CONTENTS

PART I - A GENERAL VIEW OF VOCABULARY EXPANSION

1. INTRODUCTION	14
2. METHODS OF VOCABULARY EXPANSION	18
a) SEMANTIC SHIFT	18
b) BORROWING	23
c) DERIVATION	25
d) COMPOUNDING	25
e) PHRASE GROUPING	26

PART II - THE LEXICAL MODERNISATION OF SOMALI

1. LANGUAGE REFORM IN SOMALIA	28
2. PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS	35
3. DETAILED ANALYSIS OF SELECTED SOMALI VOCABULARY (BY FIELD OF DISCOURSE)	40
1. AGRICULTURE	45
2. ARMED FORCES	48
3. BANKING AND FINANCE	69
4. CHEMISTRY	80
5. COMMERCE AND INDUSTRY	86
6. COMMUNICATIONS	107
7. EDUCATION	113
8. GEOGRAPHY	122
9. LANGUAGE	128
10. LAW	138
11. MATHEMATICS	144

12. MEDICINE	152
13. OFFICE EQUIPMENT	165
14. PHYSICS	169
15. POLITICS AND PUBLIC AFFAIRS	177
16. PRINTING AND PUBLISHING	214
17. SPORT	218
18. TOWN AND FACILITIES	223
19. VEHICLES AND VEHICLE PARTS	226
20. WORK	233

PART III - EXAMPLES OF VOCABULARY EXPANSION IN SELECTED

EXTRACTS FROM NEWS BULLETINS BROADCAST BY

RADIO HARGEISA, AUGUST-OCTOBER 1974 240

PART IV - THE ROLE OF THE SOMALI DAILY NEWSPAPER

'XIDDIGTA OKTOOBAR' IN THE MODERNISATION

OF SOMALI VOCABULARY 247

PART V - THE ROLE OF THE SCHOOL TEXT-BOOK IN THE

MODERNISATION OF SOMALI VOCABULARY 258

PART VI - CONCLUSIONS

265

APPENDIX I - Brief Notes on Somali Orthography

271

1. Consonants
2. Vowels
3. Table of Correspondence
4. Phonological Alternances
5. Tone



<u>APPENDIX II - The Definite Article</u>	281
1. The masculine suffix	
2. The feminine suffix	
<u>APPENDIX III - A Summary of Somali Noun Classes</u>	285
<u>APPENDIX IV - A Summary of Somali Verbal Classes</u>	289
1. Verbal Roots	
1.1. Root without extension	
1.2. Root + one extension	
1.3. Root + two extensions	
2. Substantival Roots	
2.1. Root + one extension	
2.2. Root + two extensions	
2.3. Root + three extensions	
3. Adjectival Roots	
3.1. Root without extension	
3.2. Root + one extension	
3.3. Root + two extensions	
4. Attributive Roots	
4.1. Root + one extension	
4.2. Root + two extensions	
<u>APPENDIX V - Derivational, Noun-derived and             Verb-derived Affixes</u>	303
<u>APPENDIX VI - "Indicators" and Relative Clauses</u>	309
<u>APPENDIX VII - The Co-ordinates 'oo' and 'ee'</u>	311
<u>APPENDIX VIII - The Genitive</u>	312

<u>APPENDIX IX - Prepositional Particles</u>	314
<u>NOTES</u>	316
<u>BIBLIOGRAPHICAL REFERENCES</u>	327
<u>WORD INDEX</u>	343

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

adj.	adjective
adv.	adverb
Alb.	Albanian
Am.Eng.	American English
Am.Sp.	American Spanish
Amh.	Amharic
App.	Appendix
Ar.	Arabic
attr.	attributive
attr.v.	attributive verb
coll.	collective
conj.	conjunction
co-ord.	co-ordinate
d.a.f.	definite article feminine
d.a.m.	definite article masculine
der.aff.	derivational affix
Eng.	English
Fr.	French
gen.aff.	genitival affix
Ger.	German
Gr.	Greek
Hun.	Hungarian
imp.	imperative
Ind.	Indonesian
It.	Italian
Lat.	Latin
lit.	literally
Malt.	Maltese

n.aff.	noun-derived affix
n.f.	noun feminine
n.m.	noun masculine
o.m.	original meaning
Per.	Persian
pers.pr.	personal pronoun
ph.alt.	phonological alternance
pl.	plural
Port.	Portuguese
pos.aff.	possessive affix
pr.part.	prepositional particle
r.adj.	radical adjective
ref.pr.	reflexive pronoun
rel.cls.	relative clause
Rom.	Romanian
rtv.	reiterative
Rus.	Russian
s.adj.	substantival adjective
sing.	singular
Som.	Somali
Sp.	Spanish
st.	standard
Swa.	Swahili
Tur.	Turkish
v.adj.	verbal adjective
v.aff.	verbal affix
v.ext.	verbal extension
v.r.	verbal root
v.ter.	verbal termination

### Transliteration

The following systems of transliteration are employed in this work:

Arabic/Greek/Persian/Russian - Romanization Guide, United States Department of State, Office of Research in Economics and Science, and United States Department of the Interior, Office of Geography, July 1964.

N.B. Where Arabic feminine singular nouns - from which many Somali nouns ending in -ad are derived - occur in this work, their transliteration will indicate the pre-junctive state

Amharic

System developed by Wolf Leslau and contained in his Amharic Text-book, Otto Harrassowitz, Wiesbaden, 1967.

Chinese

Pinyin syllabary, as contained in Chinese-English Dictionary, Beijing Foreign Language College, English Faculty, Beijing, 1978.

### Symbols

The following symbols are employed in this work:

- > placed after a word means that the word after this symbol is an evolution of that preceding it.
- < placed after a word means that the word before the symbol is derived from that following it.
- [ ] include transliteration
- ( ) include abbreviation
- \* hypothetical form

PART I

A GENERAL VIEW OF VOCABULARY EXPANSION

1. INTRODUCTION

The number of languages spoken throughout the world runs to several thousands - many with established orthographies, others unwritten - whose speakers may range from merely hundreds to hundreds of millions. Yet despite this diversity of languages, it is possible, in certain areas, to discern features which are clearly common to all of them. Language is, after all, an inherent feature of human communication and is used to describe or explain human experience, which is fundamentally the same no matter which language is spoken. All languages employ the same method of transmission, via the speech organs, and the physical actions involved in producing speech sounds are all very similar in nature; but more important still are the universal grammatical relationships and semantic features which are shared by all languages(1). Naturally, differences occur but where they do they are merely surface ones. The grammatical aspects shared by all languages are basically:

- a noun system (it is almost certain that a noun in one language has an equivalent in another)
- a verbal system
- the use of modifiers i.e. adjectives and adverbs

However, the area in which the most obvious differences between languages exist is that of vocabulary, the natural result of the arbitrariness in producing a codified system of sounds to express a whole range of meanings. In spite of the restricting factor of the speech organs, shared by all speakers regardless of language, the combination of sounds within a language is almost limitless (subject,

of course, to certain phonological constraints) and so consequently are the possibilities of forming new words. The methods employed to produce new words may appear haphazard to the casual observer whose language has enjoyed a long-established written tradition in which time and preference have determined ultimately the acceptance of additions to vocabulary. This is not so, however, in the case of languages whose vocabulary is subjected to rapid expansion over a short period. It is then that the strict and limiting methods are observed.

Vocabulary is the only linguistic area which is receptive to this rapid and almost infinite expansion, although this is not to say that changes do not occur in other areas such as syntax or morphology, but any such changes in these areas - where they occur - are extremely limited and the processes involved extremely slow. The creation of new words is common to all languages, and it is paradoxical that the very linguistic area which most distinguishes one language from another is also the one which draws them closer together.

Vocabulary expansion is achieved in two basic ways: either through native invention and adaptation or through loanwords, and it occurs as a result of what may be termed 'historical' change. Cultural outlook, social institutions, scientific and technological innovation and ideas are all subject to change and as a result, all associated vocabulary changes with them. Normally, the process is gradual, but sometimes a language's receptiveness to rapid vocabulary expansion is demonstrated in a sudden social or cultural upheaval.

Such was the case in Medieval Europe with the early scientific discoveries. These innovations required a new vocabulary to describe them since existing vocabulary was inadequate, and the need was met by the scientists of the day - the alchemists and astrologers - whose terminologies have, to a certain extent, been retained by modern science.

Similarly, the introduction of the printing-press and the spread of education led to an expansion of vocabulary through literature. Here it was the poet and the dramatist who played important roles in the enrichment and development of vocabulary by revitalising archaic words fallen into disuse, coining new ones, developing new meanings and setting the seal of approval on new usages. It is doubtful whether, in Europe at least, the poet will ever again hold the same prominent position as an inventor of words. Competition with the mass media is too great for him now. However, while the poet appears remote to the common man in western society today, his influence is still felt in other parts of the world, and this is especially true in the case of Somalia, where he has had a significant part to play in the modernisation of vocabulary, an aspect which will be considered later in more detail.

While social or cultural innovations prior to the last century had led to the creation of new terminologies to describe them, they had, nonetheless, been isolated occurrences, having little profound influence upon the masses. However, the period since the Industrial Revolution has witnessed possibly the greatest 'historical' change ever known, the greatest effect upon man's daily life ever experienced, and an unprecedented surge of vocabulary expansion to cope with the vast influx of new technology and the new social outlook. The innumerable inventions and discoveries resulting from this technological and scientific revolution have brought thousands of new words into the languages of the world, particularly in the fields of mathematics, medicine, natural sciences and technology. Many such words are coined from Greek and Latin morphemes, and for the speaker living within the Graeco-Roman cultural community, these terms enable him to absorb this new vocabulary. Of course, it is extremely difficult to apply such a

system of word-building in languages where Greek and Latin roots are alien. Thus, if a language is to preserve its own character, it should be capable of meeting the need for new words from its own lexical stock.

In 1971, a year before the introduction of the official orthography, the Somali Supreme Revolutionary Council instructed its Somali Language Commission to produce a range of school text-books and adult literacy material. In issuing this instruction, the Somali Government was profiting from the research experience gained over several years by the Language Commission. In fact, in the period between Independence in 1960 and the coming to power of the Supreme Revolutionary Council in 1969, successive Somali governments had encouraged these linguistic studies, and particularly those related to the choice of an official orthography. At the same time, a co-ordinated research programme into ways of expanding vocabulary had been carried out and certain members of the Commission had already examined the various methods employed in other languages, having been sent to several countries including Great Britain, the United States of America, the People's Republic of China, the Soviet Union and the Arab states for this precise purpose. The conclusions drawn from these studies revealed that, despite the diversity of languages, the problems and solutions were more or less identical. There is every reason to believe, therefore, that even without such research, the Somali programme of vocabulary expansion would have followed exactly the same path. However, the explicit knowledge gained from these studies abroad - that even the more scientifically and technologically advanced nations had passed through such a stage of language development - served to give courage and confidence to the Somalis,

is grasped? In addition, certain concepts are repeated in many languages. In Mainland Standard Chinese (Guōyǔ) the word 瞳子 [tóngkǒng], pupil (of the eye) contains the element 子 meaning child; in English, the word pupil can mean schoolchild or pupil of the eye; and in Greek, κόρη [kóri] means girl or pupil of the eye. All share the same concept. Likewise, the concept behind the word denoting a rough sea is similar in many languages. The Mainland Standard Chinese word 洋 [yáng] ocean is composed of the radical 氵 water and the element 羊 sheep or goat; this is also reflected in the French moutons, sheep or foamy waves, and the Russian барашки [barashki], sheep or foamy waves (c.f. white horses in English and cavalloni in Italian). While not sharing exactly the same metaphors as in the above examples, Arabic uses the word ريم [rim] to describe sea foam; it can also mean a white antelope. In fact, certain basic ideas or concepts seem to be contained in all languages, but what may be integrally woven into the fabric of one language may only be expressed superficially in another.

#### iv) Metonymy

Words may often possess several aspects, all of which may be evoked simultaneously, albeit on various levels. The particular aspect evoked naturally depends upon the speaker, but constant emphasis upon a particular aspect of a concept or object may ultimately lead to its adopting the full meaning of the former concept and eventually replacing it.

Such permutations can take the form of:

- concomitant circumstances, where a word describing a particular feature or characteristic may come to indicate the thing itself, e.g. dirigible (Port.) airship (something which can be easily directed); impermeable (Sp.) raincoat (something which has the property of being impermeable).

- the quality signifying the person or object possessing it, e.g. beauty (Eng.) meaning both the quality and the person possessing it; xoog (Som.) strength and army, which possesses strength.
- the part signifying the whole, whereby a single characteristic may be sufficient to identify a referent or conjure up a complete image, e.g. espada (Sp.) bullfighter and the sword which he uses; گوما [goma] (Amh.) rubber and tyre, which is made of rubber; ساعة [sa'at] (Ar.) hour and watch, which indicates the hour.
- the name of the object signifying place, e.g. bureau (Fr.) desk and office, the place where a desk is located; studio (It.) study, both the act and the place where it is undertaken.
- the action signifying the product or the result, e.g. ελξις [éxis] (Gr.) pull and charm; siembra (Sp.) sowing and a sown field.
- the name of the material for the object made from it: e.g. gomë (Alb.) eraser, made from rubber; flannels (Eng.) trousers, made from flannel; tabaco (Sp.) cigarette, made from tobacco.
- the name of the receptacle for the contents, e.g. galerie (Fr.) gallery (of theatre); auditorio (Port.) audience and auditorium
- the symbol for the thing symbolised, e.g. fegato (It.) courage, its literal meaning being liver; kelyo (Som.) courage, literally kidneys; yürek (Tur.) courage, literally heart.
- the name of the instrument for the product, e.g. hierro (Sp.) iron > brand and the thing used to brand; iron (Eng.) for pressing clothes (c.f. fer (Fr.), ferro (It.), fier (Rom.) and seterika (Ind.)).
- the action for the agent, e.g. Besuch (Ger.) visit and visitor; ayuda (Sp.) help and helper.
- the action signifying the time of action e.g. fall (Amer. Eng.)

- autumn (the period when leaves fall); страда́ная пора́ [strádnaya porá] (Rus.), harvest (lit. time of suffering); and siesta (Sp.), sleep after lunch, from the Latin sexta, the sixth hour.
- the action signifying the place of action, e.g. retraite (Fr.) retreat and shelter, the place to which one retreats; descanso (Sp.) rest or interval, which has come to mean landing (of stairs) where one rests, and haqq (Malt.) justice and court, the place where justice is administered.
  - the action signifying the instrument or means of action, e.g. diligence (Fr.) meaning haste and stagecoach; disciplina (Port.) meaning both discipline and the cat-o'-nine tails, a form of maintaining discipline.
  - the material signifying the object from which it is made e.g. كبريت [Kibrit] (Ar.) match and sulphur, the substance from which the match is made; ባር [bar] (Amh.) Ethiopian currency and silver, the metal from which the original coins were made.
  - the inventor's name or brand name of a product for the product itself, e.g. mackintosh (Eng.), raincoat; termos (It.) thermos flask; risel (Sp.) mascara.

#### v) Associative Phonetic Transposition

This occurs where there is a similarity in pronunciation between words - particularly archaic or foreign - which gives rise to confusion either through ignorance or negligence: e.g. school (of fish), the nearest English pronunciation of the Dutch scull, meaning crowd; baños (Amer.Sp.) banns of marriage through popular etymology from the Latin form banni used in the Church (c.f. st. Sp. amonestaciones).

#### vi) Extension

This applies to words possessing a specific meaning which have developed a more general sense. Vocabulary restricted possibly to certain

social or cultural groups may become extended in meaning and occur in other circles, gradually becoming accepted by the community as a whole, e.g. መብት [mäbrat] (Amh.) lamp, extended to mean electricity; armoire (Fr.) cupboard, originally a place where arms were kept; and вокзал [vokzál] (Rus.) station, derived from Vauxhall Station in London.

#### vii) Restrictions

Just as extensions are words with formerly specific meanings but which have developed a more general sense, so restrictions are words with a formerly general meaning which have adopted a specialised sense e.g. πειρατεία [piratía] (Gr.) piracy, originally meaning an adventure or undertaking; hakat (Som.) comma, the normal word for 'pause'; and estación (Sp.) season, whose general meaning is station. Over a period of time, words may undergo both extension and restriction, processes which occur unconsciously on the part of speakers, and which often accompany a change in outlook.

#### b) BORROWING

Loanwords are lexical borrowings from other languages which are adapted to fit the phonetic structure of the native language and hence they do not appear to be other than perfectly good "native" words to the speaker uttering them, e.g. መክኒካል [mäkina] (Amh.) car, from Italian macchina; csütörtök (Hun.) Thursday, from Southern Slav cetvirtuk; isbeerbaadh (Som.) from English sparepart; livu (Swa.) from English leave.

Foreign borrowings, on the other hand, are those which have undergone little or no phonetic change, and are still structurally different from the language which has borrowed them, e.g. le weekend (Fr.); interpiu (Ind.), interview; el estándar (Sp.) and kiplefti (Swa.) traffic roundabout, all borrowed from English.

The use of loanwords is dependent upon three main factors: the subject of discourse, whether it is technical or non-technical; the social context, which can impose its own patterns on the discourse; and the education and outlook of the speaker, the older generation being more likely to employ well-established loanwords in contrast to the younger generation, always eager to be different and preferring to use the unassimilated loan.

The adoption of loanwords appears to come in cultural waves, whether it be the introduction of new philosophical concepts difficult to translate or the influx of commercial goods together with service manuals or instructions relating to their use which may contain terms having no equivalents in the native language.

Besides the loanwords themselves, it is interesting to consider the time-scale of their entry into a language and the spheres in which they occur, for the introduction of a word is often linked to a moment in time.

Loanwords are usually to be found in specialised areas of discourse, not in everyday speech, and when and where they occur is determined by economic, cultural and technological factors. Certain languages have assumed dominance in particular cultural and scientific fields. Many terms relating to mathematics, astronomy and chemistry are derived from Arabic, e.g. algebra, azimuth, alcohol, alkaloid. Terms relating to music are often borrowed, in an unassimilated form, from Italian:

adagio, arpeggio, crescendo, intermezzo, opera. Likewise, English has provided sporting terminology, such as sport, boxing, football, ring, etc.

W.H. Whitely considers that there are two types of loanword which he terms "established" and "probationary". "Established forms", he explains, "are those that have been in general use for a number of years... Probationary loans are those that, for one reason or another, are not yet in general use. These include colloquial and slang words and phrases, as well as a large number of words for which non-acceptance is most closely associated with their unfamiliarity"(2). He then further sub-divides loanwords into "conformist" and "innovatory", "conformist" being applied to words assimilated into the existing patterns of the language, while "innovatory", as the term suggests, is applied to innovations, such as shifts in stress patterns.

#### c) DERIVATION

New words may be formed by the addition of prefixes and suffixes (bound morphemes) to existing roots (free morphemes) in accordance with the phonetic rules of the language (3), e.g. hangiu (Rom.) innkeeper < han, inn + suffix -giu indicating occupation; midnimo (Som.) unity < mid, one + suffix -nimo indicating essence or inherent quality behind the basic element of the word; meslektas (Tur.), colleague < meslek, profession + suffix -tas indicating fellow.

#### d) COMPOUNDING

This method involves the union of two or more existing roots (free morphemes) to form new lexical combinations with new meanings, e.g. frogman (Eng.); helyesírás (Hun.) orthography (lit. correct writing); dayaxacmeed (Som.) satellite (lit. artificial moon).



e) PHRASE GROUPING

The introduction of a new concept or object into a language, particularly when adopted from another language, may not always be adequately achieved by recourse to any of the four methods discussed above. Certain concepts or objects for which no native equivalents exist and whose precise meanings cannot be successfully expressed or contained through the coining of simply one new word may sometimes be rendered by a phrase group. This involves a circumlocution or paraphrasis to arrive at the exact meaning, e.g. ilmu djiwa (Ind.), psychology (lit. science of the soul); مردم شناسی [mardom shenāsī] (Per.), anthropology (lit. man knowledge); cilaiga dhalashada (Som.), obstetrics (lit. science of birth).

Phrase grouping may also lead to the creation of calques. In such cases, it is not the foreign loanword (sometimes a phrase group itself) which is taken bodily into the language, but rather a translation employing native equivalents for the various elements of the word, e.g. wishful thinking < Wunschdenken (Ger.); gumeysi cusub (Som.) < neo-colonialism; abanico eléctrico (Am. Sp.) < electric fan (c.f. ventilador (st. Sp.))

To move from one culture to another involves a change of consciousness. In the economically developed countries of the world, the difficulties are diminished to a certain extent by a growing convergence of thinking. Differences are more sharply defined, however, in less developed or isolated communities.

Having considered the wider aspects of vocabulary expansion, four points emerge:

- i) that the modernisation of a language centres upon its vocabulary

- ii) that such modernisation is a widely-observed phenomenon
- iii) that methods of vocabulary expansion are universal
- iv) that, within the limitations imposed upon the methods of vocabulary expansion, languages are able to manifest their preferences for one or more methods in particular fields of discourse.

Whether it be the language of an industrialised nation or that of a developing country, it has at its disposal five basic methods of vocabulary expansion which, as we have seen, are:

- i) Semantic Shift
- ii) Borrowing
- iii) Derivation
- iv) Compounding
- v) Phrase Grouping

Methods i, iii, iv and v are by far the most important, since they enrich the language through native invention and adaptation. Method ii, the least important semantically, can be looked upon as the last resort. The use of loanwords for reasons of linguistic necessity, as in science or technology where concepts may be impossible to translate adequately and where an international vocabulary is essential for communication, is understandable. However, it is ironic that the language of a developing nation - a driving force which in many cases engendered a national identity - should suffer the same foreign occupation (lexically speaking) which its country experienced perhaps politically and economically before independence.

To examine the way in which a developing nation, with a recently introduced orthography, is managing to cope with the urgent problems of lexical modernisation, Part II contains a detailed study of Somalia's attempts to make use of these very methods of vocabulary expansion.

PART II

THE LEXICAL MODERNISATION OF SOMALI

1. LANGUAGE REFORM IN SOMALIA

Somalia enjoys a special position among the countries of sub-Saharan Africa. Unlike the majority of them which possess multi-lingual societies and have experienced the problems posed by the exigencies of having to select only one national language - problems exacerbated by the arbitrary borders drawn up by the former colonial powers who paid scant regard to ethnic or linguistic groups - Somalia is united by a single language, spoken as a mother tongue by almost all its inhabitants, and boasts a rich oral literature. However, despite the Somali's natural pride in his language, he was unable, before 1972, to communicate in writing with his fellow-countrymen. Until this time, a dichotomy had existed between the spoken and the written word (4). Somali was the language spoken by all Somalis, but through lack of an official orthography, all written communication was necessarily in a foreign language.

Somalia is a Moslem country and has always had close links with the Arabic-speaking world. Therefore it was not unnatural for use to be made of Arabic as a medium of written communication, particularly among educated Somalis. The role of Arabic remained unchallenged until the arrival of the colonial powers of Great Britain and Italy. Under their administration, all aspects of public life were conducted either in English in the north of the country, or in Italian in the south; and with the introduction of secular education in their respective areas of influence, each became the language of instruction

in Somali schools. Thus, in order to receive an education, a Somali child was obliged to learn a foreign language.

In 1960, the British Somaliland Protectorate and the Italian United Nations Trusteeship Territory of Somalia came to an end, and the withdrawal of Great Britain and Italy brought problems for Somalia. The Somali language, at that stage, was unable to replace the administrative and educational functions of English and Italian. The result was that civil servants and teachers, while all being Somali speakers, found themselves unable to communicate in writing with their colleagues in other parts of the country. In some instances this inability to communicate with colleagues was to be found in the same office, where translators were employed to deal with correspondence between them. Very few of them knew both English and Italian, and Arabic did not provide an adequate alternative since, although many Somalis had received some Koranic instruction, the majority of them possessed little more than a rudimentary knowledge of the language.

Such was the linguistic confusion in Somalia that a United Nations official sent to examine the situation explained that "the continued language problem is impeding the development of the Somali State. Students are discouraged from attending school because they must struggle with the essentials of a foreign tongue before they can master the substantive courses. All available literature remains the preserve of a privileged few. Laws that define rights and obligations must be interpreted, often falteringly, to the people. Finally, the absence of a nationally accepted written language inhibits further development of a virile consciousness"(5).

Realising the need for a Somali orthography, the new Government established a Language Commission to consider the question. However, little, if any, progress was made, due principally to the politically

emotive question of a choice of script. Such was the feeling aroused by the possible choice of a Latin or Arabic script that it led to demonstrations and riots and the political implications prevented the Government from taking a definite stand, since it was reluctant to use coercion to introduce a new orthography.

This desire to introduce a written form for the Somali language was by no means a new one (6). In fact, several unofficial systems had been developed but none of them had been extensively used and consequently were never generally accepted. During the 1920's, a system called Far Soomaali (Somali writing) was introduced. It was taught on a purely voluntary basis and by 1969, some 40,000 people were using it, principally in private correspondence. It introduced new orthographic symbols to represent Somali phonology, and of the dozen or so similar alphabets employed, it was perhaps the most successful. A Latin script was also introduced, which, although used by relatively few people - mainly collectors of Somali oral literature such as Muuse Xaaji Ismaaciil Galaal and Shire Jaamac Axmed - was readily understood by many through contact with English and Italian.

In addition, an adapted Arabic script was employed but on a very limited scale. It was not generally adopted because of its inability to represent the Somali vowel system without undergoing considerable alteration (7).

With the rise to power of the Somali Supreme Revolutionary Council in October 1969 came the decision to introduce a Somali orthography, a policy which was contained in an article of the Revolutionary Council's Charter (8). The principal driving force behind this decision to launch a language reform was patriotism. The emergence of a nation and language reform are closely linked, and the Somalis' passionate

love for their language was mingled with a belief that Somali - until only comparatively recently reflecting a purely pastoral, nomadic and agricultural way of life - was totally adequate to meet the lexical demands of the modern world. Their language reform was helped by the fact that all Somalis speak the same language.

Regional differences do exist, but where problems of comprehension arise between Somalis, they have recourse to a dialect which for a long time has served as a type of lingua franca among all Somali speakers (9), developed as a result of their nomadic way of life to facilitate trade and intermarriage, and which was spread particularly by the poets and poetry reciters who travelled the length and breadth of the country, presenting their works to the public at meetings and contests (10). "The extensive and conscious cultivation of the art of speaking is one of the most striking features of Somali culture. Its highest form is found in the alliterative oral poetry which has attracted the attention of several scholars and is regarded by the Somalis as the mainstay of their national heritage, a sentiment now much reinforced by modern patriotism and the drive towards unification of all Somali-speaking territories"(11).

In October 1972, coinciding with the third anniversary of the Somali Revolution, and one year after the Supreme Revolutionary Council's instruction to the Language Commission (Guddiga Af-Soomaaliga) to consider the compilation of a series of school text-books and

adult literacy material, the President of Somalia, Major-General Maxamed Siyaad Barre, announced the introduction of a new Somali orthography. It had been decided to adopt the Latin script without modifications or any diacritic marks, although for phonological reasons digraphs had to be employed and certain letters were assigned unusual pronunciation values (12). The choice proved successful since it adapted conveniently to Somali phonology (13), it was easy to learn, and printing using the Latin script proved much simpler and more economical than any other. At the same time, Somali was declared the sole official language, to be employed in all aspects of public life. This meant that all government employees were required to undergo a literacy test in the new written language, and failure to pass it meant dismissal. Because the choice of script had caused so many problems for former governments, the Supreme Revolutionary Council realised that steps had to be taken to prevent any serious opposition to their unilateral choice of the Latin script for the Somali orthography. With this in mind, a programme was devised to ensure that the new orthography would be received with enthusiasm by the Somali people. They initiated a nation-wide literacy campaign and provided language talks, with particular emphasis on punctuation and spelling, which were broadcast on Somali radio.

Advantage was also taken of the popular oral poetry tradition. Poets, highly respected members of Somali society, were commissioned to compose poems in praise of the new orthography. These were then set to music and also broadcast over the radio. Gradually, Somali was employed more and more in the press, until eventually it became used exclusively in the national daily newspaper, Xiddigta Oktoobar (October Star), having successfully replaced the former colonial languages in this important aspect of mass communication. Education formed only one part of the language reform, but a very important part, and by 1973, Somali had become the sole medium of instruction in all primary schools. In the same year, the Language Commission had completed its assignment to produce a range of school text-books and literacy aids and the educational revolution was under-way (14). The first move was to reorganise the Ministry of Education. It was divided into two new ministries, the Ministry of Culture and Higher Education (Wasaaradda Hiddaha iyo Tacliinta Sare) and the Ministry of Education and Youth Training (Wasaaradda Waxbarashada iyo Barbaarinta). The former became responsible for research and the publishing of works on oral literature and tradition through the establishment of the Academy of Culture (Akademiyaha Dhaqanka). It encouraged new literary works through a system of subsidies, granted whether the works were commercially viable or not. Responsibility for the preparation of school text-books fell to the Curriculum Department (Waaxda Manaahijta) of the Ministry of Education and

Youth Training, whose school inspectors also monitored the use of the new vocabulary in all school subjects, while literacy aids were handled by the Adult Education Department (Waaaxda Waxbarashada Dadka Waaweyn). The Somali Language Commission itself has now become merely a supervisory body, concerned with problems relating solely to the language.

In the comparatively short period since 1972, great advances have been made in the field of language reform in Somalia. The introduction of an official orthography has led to the publishing in Somali of school-books in all subjects, a highly successful mass literacy campaign even in the remotest parts of the country, and the appearance of not only a national daily newspaper, but also many weekly and monthly periodicals. Such language engineering has been made easier and more effective due to the fact that all printing is under government control, there are no independent newspapers and radio is controlled by the Ministry of Information and Public Guidance (Wasaaradda Warfaafinta iyo Hanuuninta Dadweynaha). All local government affairs are now conducted and reported in Somali and in 1976, a Department of Somali Language and Literature was opened in the National University of Somalia.

With regard to university education, the languages of instruction are still English and Italian, except in the cases of Somali and Arabic studies, but in the dissertations for the final B.A. and B.Sc. examinations, students are encouraged to submit also a Somali version. It is hoped eventually to replace these foreign languages with Somali, thereby diminishing their importance in the academic field, although they will still be needed for research matters. To achieve all that it has within these few short years, the Somali Government has been obliged to use all the means at its disposal in this highly centralised

planning programme not only to bring a formerly pastoral and agricultural society into the modern world, but also to adapt the Somali language to meet the needs of a modern society. However, its resoluteness and determination to expand Somali vocabulary has been tempered by moderateness in its approach to the problem. Its success is due, in large part, to the role that the Somali language has always played as a symbol of national culture and identity.

## 2. PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS

Officially, the Somali programme of lexical modernisation was initiated only in 1972, although the foundations for it had been laid some three decades earlier with the advent of broadcasting. The modernisation of Somali vocabulary really began in the early 1940's, a process which was neither planned nor involved any conscious government intervention and which continued in this way until 1969, when a concerted language reform programme began, increasing in 1972 with the introduction of the new orthography. The first regular broadcasts in Somali took place in 1943 from Hargeisa, northern Somalia, under the auspices of the British Army in occupation employing Army transmitters and technical personnel. The Somali spoken in northern Somalia forms part of the standard Somali dialect (15), and its use in these broadcasts ensured that they were understood by all the listeners, and this in its turn established the dialect's position as the 'radio language'.

Prior to the Second World War, Somalia had been isolated from the rest of the world, and until then what international news had reached the Somalis had done so by word of mouth, particularly from sailors and migrant workers. Because of their isolation and the acute lack

of educational facilities in the country, the majority of the Somali people were unaware of, and unable to express, concepts relating to the modern world. Terms such as socialism and economic development had no equivalents in Somali and could only be described by means of extremely involved circumlocutions. This is not to say that the Somali language was in any way inadequate. It met the everyday needs of the people, possessing an enormously rich vocabulary relating to animal husbandry, traditional medicine, weather forecasting, poetry, etc. However, at that particular time, the modern vocabulary was lacking because the concepts behind it were alien to the Somalis. With the outbreak of the Second World War and Somalia's eventual involvement in it, the country was suddenly thrust into the 20th Century. The British military occupation of Italian Somaliland meant liberation from oppression. The war also affected the Somaliland Protectorate where freedom and prosperity came about as a result of the temporary unification of all the Somali territories under British rule.

Radio was a new and influential factor since the first radio broadcasts in Somali were international news items translated from English. However, because the listeners possessed an extreme pride in their language founded upon a long tradition of oral literature, especially poetry, the standard of translating had to be high and the skill to achieve this acquired rapidly. Care was needed, and expected, in the translation of these broadcasts. The Somali public required clarity and conciseness, particularly in the new vocabulary - anything else was unacceptable to them - and a broadcaster found lacking in these respects met not only with public disapproval but often dismissal.

The new vocabulary posed the biggest problem for translators and broadcasters alike, and in order to discover what was or was not acceptable, they were obliged to maintain close contact with their audiences. It would have been possible to introduce nothing but borrowings from Arabic and English to fill the lexical gaps, but this would have met with a public outcry. It would have been tantamount to admitting that Somali, as a language, was intellectually inadequate to express these new concepts. This is not to say that borrowing did not take place, but it was realised that the introduction of borrowings on a vast scale would place too much of a lexical burden upon the listener.

There was, and still is, a general reluctance among Somalis to make excessive use of foreign words whose alien roots might tend to cause problems for native Somali speakers, and therefore those loanwords which are accepted are usually merely cultural borrowings describing objects or concepts alien to the Somalis and they do not replace existing Somali words. Although not having possessed a written language until very recently, the Somali people, through their long tradition of oral literature, have access to an immense lexical stock which can be tapped, for it is easier to memorize and understand words which have some immediate significance for the speaker, particularly in the case of children. This use of indigenous material can provide a link between the national culture of the speaker (which has its roots in the traditions of rural Somalia) and the modern world of science and technology. To overcome these linguistic problems, Somali broadcasters often sought advice on the coining of new words from the poets, poetry reciters and story-tellers, many of whom were monolingual and illiterate, coming from pastoral or nomadic backgrounds and yet regarded as authorities on language. The political changes experienced in Somalia after 1943

led to the introduction of secondary education in the 1950's, and the availability of scholarships abroad, producing a new educated elite. Many new broadcasters, educated abroad, still found it necessary at times to explain the meaning of a foreign word or phrase to one of these bards in order to find an acceptable Somali equivalent. Therefore, by the time that the new orthography was introduced, the language of radio journalism had already become established and provided the basis for the new language of the press.

However, this groundwork was lacking in most other fields where new vocabularies were needed, and the process had to be undertaken from the very beginning. The most important work in this field has been carried out by the Ministry of Information (Wasaaradda Warfaafinta), the main source of lexical modernisation in the field of political vocabulary, and the Curriculum Office (Xafiiska Manaahijta) of the Ministry of Education which has provided most of the modern vocabulary needed for the teaching of mathematics and the sciences. This Office is responsible not only for the preparation of curricula in both primary and secondary schools and the implementation of ministerial and governmental policies, but also for the writing, publishing and distribution of school text-books in a variety of subjects in close collaboration with teachers. The Ministry of Education had inherited a serious communication problem. Three languages were being used for instruction in government schools in Somalia - English, Italian and Arabic. Depending upon whether the school was located in the north or south of the country, the language of instruction was either English or Italian respectively. At the same time, Arabic was used in some areas both in primary and secondary schools and in others at a primary level but not secondary. Arabic was also the language of

instruction in Koranic schools which probably had a larger number of pupils than all the government schools taken together and were to be found in even the remotest nomadic settlement, but the standard was very elementary indeed. As a result, confusion reigned; and this confusion led to the Somali Ministry of Education seeking some kind of standardisation. They realised that instruction in three languages would become a barrier to learning in the long term, that it could instill a certain cultural alienation within students towards their own society, that it could isolate the school from the community, and that because of different systems of evaluation, it could prevent the channelling of students from one level of education to another, thereby affecting adversely their prospects of employment. They were afraid that, by continuing to maintain such an educational system, they were likely to create three sub-cultures between which there existed no mutual understanding.

To overcome these problems, the Somali Language Commission in 1972 undertook to produce a range of school text-books in mathematics, sciences and social studies for the first four classes of the eight-year primary cycle. Naturally, the language contained in them was limited since the books were designed for young children, but as those children, for whom the books were prepared, developed, so the terminology had to be revised and expanded to meet the requirements of the remaining levels of the primary cycle, and in 1973, the Curriculum Office set up committees to examine the new needs. Primary school teachers were brought together in special seminars so that they might familiarise themselves with the new terminology, and so discuss its development. Based upon their findings, a text-book writing campaign began in 1974, the aims of which were to revise the curricula of

primary and secondary schools and to produce books and teachers' guides, and at the same time, as a result of 'feed-back' from teachers brought to the attention of the Ministry of Education by their school inspectors or through teachers' seminars, to review and standardise the existing terminology, extending it where necessary to meet the needs of the secondary level.

According to Bashir Farah Kahiye (16), Director of the Curriculum Office, certain preliminary steps had to be taken. These included the establishment of committees whose members had Arabic, English or Italian as a second language; the compilation of a list of required terminology for each school subject in these three languages; the re-examination of Somali terminology already established and in use in school text-books; and finally agreement upon terminology to be used in future text-books. The methods which they employed to select the new vocabulary - semantic shift, borrowings, derivation, compounding, phrase groups - are applicable to the entire programme of modernisation.

### 3. A DETAILED ANALYSIS OF SELECTED SOMALI VOCABULARY (BY FIELD OF DISCOURSE)

We have seen that vocabulary expansion is a universal phenomenon and that the methods available are restricted. What follows is a panoramic display of the methods discussed above applied to the specific manifestation of Somali and shows:

- a) the use of these limited methods in semantic shift, borrowings, derivation, compounding and phrase groups
- b) the speed of the expansion
- c) the freedom of choice exercised by the Somalis within the constraints of the above methods in respect of vocabulary relating to particular fields of discourse.

To describe the various methods of vocabulary expansion employed currently in Somali, there follows a detailed analysis of selected modern Somali terms drawn from a wide variety of sources, including the press, novels and school text-books, and the appendices at the end of this work are specifically designed to facilitate explanations of these terms. Each of the following sections deals with a specific field of discourse and in this way it will be possible to see those subjects which attract particular methods of vocabulary expansion. Alongside the modern Somali term will be given the English translation and, where necessary, there will be beneath it an explanation to show how such a term has been developed. The sections will be examined in the following order: Semantic Shift (17), Borrowings, Derivation (18), Compounds (19), Phrase Groups (20). The reason for this is to avoid a duplication of explanations since words listed in the first two sections may also appear in the subsequent sections in derivative, compound or phrase forms. In such cases, no further explanation of the word in question will be given, but an indication that the word has already been examined will be made by reference to the particular section in which it first appeared. Should a word appear more than once in the same field of discourse, subsequent references within this field will be to the section in which it first occurred with a translation. Should a word appearing in a previous field of discourse occur in a subsequent one, the translation will be given together with a reference to the section in which it first occurred. However, common Somali words used in compounds or phrase groups will be translated each time they occur unless examples of the same word immediately follow one another, in which case reference will be made to the first example. By this method, it will be possible in the case of compounding to identify the various elements involved, and



in the case of semantic shift, to consider how the change took place, by looking at the original "non-specialised" meaning of the word. As for borrowings, the examples from Somali will be followed by the identification of the source language, except where English itself is the source language, in which case no etymon will be given since this will be self-evident from the translation. In the case of Arabic loan-words, which have always been a common feature of Somali, they have been included where considered to be of interest and where they also form part of new compound words.

In the case of phonetic changes in words contained in the following examples, reference will be made to the appropriate section of Appendix I to explain them.

The various forms of the Somali definite article, identified by the abbreviations d.a.f. and d.a.m. will be explained once only when each form first occurs by reference to Appendix II. Thereafter, they will be identified only by the appropriate abbreviation. Whether words in phrase groupings have the definite article or not depends upon the form in which they were found originally.

Somali nouns will be identified by the abbreviation n.f. or n.m. to indicate gender and pl. to indicate a plural form. The numbers I-VI will indicate the class to which the noun belongs. Details of the Somali noun classes will be found at Appendix III.

Derivational affixes, noun-derived affixes and verb-derived affixes will be identified by the abbreviations der.aff., n. aff. and v.aff. respectively, and explanations of them will be found at Appendix V.

Verbal roots (v.r.) and verbal extensions (v.ext.) will be identified and explained by reference to the appropriate section of Appendix IV.

The four Somali prepositional particles (pr.part.) will be explained each time they occur by reference to the appropriate section of

Appendix IX.

In the case of the other appendices, references to them will be given in full in the explanations of the vocabulary.

Finally, the words contained in the following lists cover three chronological phases of Somali vocabulary expansion - those which had entered the language prior to 1943, those which entered the language after the introduction of radio broadcasts in 1943, and those which have entered the language since the introduction of the official orthography in 1972. However, as a result of the lack of written Somali material before 1972, it is virtually impossible to date any of the words coined in this period with any degree of accuracy. Similarly, neologisms and borrowings which appear in the written language after 1972 might well have been coined before this date. In view of this, there has been no attempt made in this work to date the vocabulary which appears below, since any such datings would, at best, be only approximate, and could even be misleading.

Given the extreme difficulties involved in dating modern Somali vocabulary, it is ironic that vocabulary which entered the language before 1943 should prove to be less of a problem in this respect. Prior to this date, very little vocabulary expansion had taken place in view of Somalia's isolation from the modern world. What vocabulary expansion there was took the form, principally, of loanwords from Arabic, and these loans, such as cashuur, markab, xisaab, had entered the language before 1943, and in some cases, several centuries before. The majority of such words had become totally integrated into Somali and were no longer considered borrowings. Unfortunately, there can still be no specific dating given for such vocabulary because of this lack of documentary evidence, but that such words were used at

least some forty to fifty years before 1943 is revealed in the dictionaries of Larajasse (1897) and Reinisch (1902).

The precise dating of modern vocabulary becomes more difficult as we come nearer the present. As a result of radio broadcasting in 1943, there followed a period of increased vocabulary expansion. However, in the majority of cases, the only way to date a word, and then only approximately, is to examine the original concept borrowed or adapted, thereby determining merely the date after which the neologism or borrowing could have entered the language. For example, the word qunbuladda durriyadda, atomic bomb, borrowed from Arabic, obviously entered Somali after the bomb's invention, but any subsequent and more precise dating is impossible. Certainly there is written evidence to show that the word was used in radio news bulletins which were part of an orthographical experiment undertaken in 1954 (see Part III), but it may well have been in use some years prior to this date. In the case of that modern vocabulary to be found in written material after 1972, most of it appears to refer to specific aspects of mathematics, science and technology rather than to more general fields, but again no accurate dating is possible since there is nothing to prove that some words were not coined before the introduction of the official orthography.

# 1. AGRICULTURE

## 1.1. Semantic Shift

Beero	n.m.pl.III	agriculture o.m. gardens, farms
Goof	n.m.I	soil erosion o.m. dried-up well, eroded land

## 1.2. Borrowings

Akar	n.m.II	acre
Hektar	n.m.II	hectare
Kiintal	n.m.II	quintal (measurement of weight equivalent to 100 kilograms)

## 1.3. Derivation

### 1.3.1. Simple Derivation

Barwaaqeeye	n.m.VI	fertiliser
barwaaqo	n.f.IV	prosperity (usually connected with effect of good rainfall)
-ee	v.ext	see App. IV, 2.1.2.
> barwaaqee		
(o)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Kaymayn	n.f.III	afforestation
kayn	n.f.III	forest, thicket
n > m	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4 (viii)
-ee	v.ext	see App. IV, 2.1.2
-ayn	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

1.4. Compounds

1.4.1. Compounds involving semantic shift

Beeraqoon	n.f.III	agronomy
beer	n.f.III	garden, farm
aqoon		knowledge
Beeryaqaan	n.m.II	agronomist
beer		see above
yaqaan	n.aff.	see App. V, 2

1.4.2. Compounds involving derivation

Bacaadcelin	n.f.III	desert reclamation
bacaad	n.m.II	hot white sand seen on dunes
cel*	v.r.	be returned (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3. (b)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Ciidmuunadayn	n.f.III	soil-sampling
ciid	n.f.III	earth
muunad	n.f.III	type, sort
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.2.
-ayn	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Dhuldhaqasho	n.f.IV	land conservation
dhul	n.m.I	land, country
dhaq	v.r.	save, conserve (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-o	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.5. (a)
o>a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4. (i)
-sho	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Kayngooyn	n.f.III	deforestation
kayn	n.f.III	forest, thicket
goo	v.r.	cut (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3. (b)
i > y		
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

1.4.3. Simple Compounds

Biyoxidh	n.m.II	dam
biyo	n.m.pl.III	water
xidh	v.aff.	close, contain, tie App. V, 3)
Nabaadguur	n.m.II	soil erosion
nabaad	n.m.II	vegetation
guur	v.aff.	move away (see App. V, 3)
Quruuruxsooc	n.m.II	soil classification
qururux	n.m.II	gravel
sooc	v.aff.	sort, divide into groups (see App. V, 3)

1.5. Phrase Groups

Ciid hoosaad		sub-soil
ciid	n.f.III	earth
hoose	attr.	below (see Note 55)
(e)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4. (iv)
-aad	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Ciid tijaabin		soil testing
ciid		see above
tijaab*	v.r.	be tested (see App. IV, 1.1)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3. (b)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

## 2. ARMED FORCES

### 2.1. Semantic Shift

Ceel	n.m.I	fuel dump o.m. well
Giidan	n.m.II	force, troops o.m. servant
Cutub	n.m.II	unit o.m. small group of people
Dalool	n.m.II	calibre (of gun) o.m. something which is hollow or empty
Dhabbe	n.m.VI	airstrip o.m. path
Dhaqdhaqaaq	n.m.II	manoeuvres o.m. constant movement (c.f. <u>dhaqdhaqaaq</u> , 15.1. below)
Dhuun	n.f.III	barrel (of gun) o.m. pipe, reed, trachea (c.f. <u>dhuun</u> , 4.1. below)
Gaas	n.m.I	division o.m. a very large group of warriors (traditional warfare)
Gantaal	n.m.II	rocket, missile o.m. arrow (c.f. <u>roket</u> and <u>sayruukh</u> , 5.2. above)
Guuto	n.f.IV	brigade o.m. a group of warriors (traditional warfare)
Hoggaan	n.m.II	director o.m. camel's halter, leading rope (c.f. <u>hoggaan</u> , 15.1. below)
Horin	n.f.III	platoon o.m. group
Qoton	n.m.II	elevation (of gun) o.m. state of being upright
Urur	n.m.II	battalion o.m. group, gathering (c.f. <u>urur</u> , 11.1., 15.1., and 20.1. below)

Xero	n.f.IV	hangar; camp o.m. enclosure
Xoog	n.m.I	army o.m. strength (c.f. <u>xoog</u> , 14.1. below)
2.2. Borrowings		
Baarashuud	n.m.II	parachute (c.f. <u>dallad</u> below)
Baasuuke	n.m.VI	bazooka
Bam	n.m.I	bomb (c.f. <u>bambo</u> and <u>gunbulad</u> below)
Bambo	n.f.IV	bomb (c.f. <u>bam</u> above and <u>gunbulad</u> below)
Bastoolad < بشطولة [bashtūlat] (Ar.)	n.f.III	revolver
Dabbaabad < دبابة [dabbābat] (Ar.)	n.f.III	tank (c.f. <u>taangi</u> below)
Dallad < طلة [zallat] (Ar.)	n.f.III	parachute (c.f. <u>baarashuud</u> above)
Dayuurad < طائرة [tā'rat] (Ar.)	n.f.III	aircraft
Difaac < دفاع [difā'] (Ar.)	n.m.II	defence (c.f. <u>gaashaandhiig</u> , 2.4.3. below)
Fooras	n.m.II	force
Galaas	n.m.II	binoculars
Garnaydh	n.m.II	grenade
Garoon	n.m.II	ground, range (c.f. <u>garoon</u> , 17.2. below)
Garoonshid	n.m.II	groundsheet
Iskoor	n.m.II	escort
Istaraatiiji	n.m.II	strategy (c.f. <u>istaraatiijiyad</u> , 2.3.2. and <u>habka</u> <u>dagaalka</u> , 2.5. below)

Kharbudad < خربطة [kharbatat] (Ar.)	n.f.III	sabotage
Khasaare < خسارة [khasārat] (Ar.)	n.m.VI	casualties, losses
Madaafic < مدافع [madāfiʿ] (Ar.)	n.f.pl.V	artillery
Madfac < مدفع [madfaʿ] (Ar.)	n.m.V	field-gun
Magaasiin	n.m.II	magazine
Markab < مركب [markab] (Ar.)	n.m.V	ship
Miinawaar	n.m.II	warship (c.f. <u>markabka</u> <u>dagaalka</u> , 2.5. below)
Miino < mina (It.)	n.f.IV	mine
Nabaalam	n.m.II	napalm
Qumbulad < قنبلة [qumbulat] (Ar.)	n.f.III	bomb (c.f. <u>ban</u> and <u>banbo</u> above)
Raashin	n.m.II	rations
Riishad < رشة [rishat] (Ar.)	n.f.III	trigger (c.f. <u>keeb</u> in <u>keebka</u> <u>ammanka</u> , 2.5 below)
Roket	n.m.II	rocket, missile (c.f. <u>gantaal</u> , 2.1. above and <u>sayruukh</u> , below)
Sarkaal < سرکار [sarkār] (Per.)	n.m.V	officer (This word probably came through Urdu since there were Indian soldiers stationed in north- ern Somalia during the British admin- istration)
Sayruukh < صاروخ [sarūkh] (Ar.)	n.m.V	rocket, missile (c.f. <u>gantaal</u> , 2.1. above and <u>roket</u> above)
Shucaac < شعاع [shu'āʿ] (Ar.)	n.m.II	radiation
Taangi	n.m.II	tank (c.f. <u>dabbaabad</u> above)
Waddani < وطني [waṭani] (Ar.)	n.m.II	patriot
Xabbad < حبة [ḥabbat] (Ar.)	n.f.III	bullet, round of ammunition

## 2.3. Derivation

### 2.3.1. Derivation involving semantic shift

Hoggaamiye	n.m.VI	navigator
hoggaan	n.m.II	leading rope (see 2.1. above)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.3.
n > n	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(viii)
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

### 2.3.2. Derivation involving borrowing

Istaraatiijiyad	n.f.III	strategy (c.f. <u>habka dagaalka</u> , 2.5. below)
istaraatiiji	n.m.II	strategy (see 2.2. above)
-yad	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Xabbadayn	n.f.III	strafing
xabbad	n.f.III	bullet (see 2.2. above)
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.2.
-ayn	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

### 2.3.3. Simple derivation

Alifle	n.m.VI	lance-corporal
alif	n.m.II	first letter of Arabic alphabet (its shape resembling one stripe)
-le	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Bajin	n.f.III	deterrent weapon, missile (c.f. <u>bajin</u> , 1.5.3.3. below)
baq	v.r.	be afraid (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
> bajj		
q > j	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(v)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Dable	n.m.VI	private
dab	n.m.I.	fire, fire-arm
-le	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Duuliyanim	n.f.IV	aviation
duul	v.r.	fly (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
e > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-nimo	der.aff.	see App. V, 1.
Duuliye	n.m.VI	pilot (see above)
Feeraarin	n.f.III	deployment
feeraar	v.r.	be spread (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Gaashaanle	n.m.VI	major
gaashaan	n.m.II	shield (resembling the insignia worn on a major's epaulette)
-le	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Gujis	n.m.II	submarine (c.f. <u>markabka guusa biysha</u> <u>hoostooda</u> , 2.5. below)
guj*	v.r.	be pricked, goaded, touched by something pointed (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-s	der.aff.	see App. V, 1 (The use of this word for submarine derives from the popular belief that the submarine pricked the ship from below by ramming, thereby causing it to sink. (c.f. <u>ሰርገጽ ማርካብ</u> [sarg-ag mārkaḅ] (Amh.))

Qarxiye	n.m.VI	detonator
qarax	v.r.	explode (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
> qarxi		
(a)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(ii)
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Sarreeye	n.m.VI	general (c.f. <u>sarreeye</u> , 11.3.1. below)
sare	attr.	above (see Note 55)
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 4.1.1.
> sarree		
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Talis	n.m.II	command, H.Q. (c.f. <u>talis</u> , 15.3.3. below)
tal*	v.r.	be advised (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-s	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
2.4. <u>Compounds</u>		
2.4.1. <u>Compounds involving borrowings</u>		
Gacangarnaydh	n.m.II	hand-grenade (c.f. <u>qunbuladda gacanta</u> , 2.5. below)
gacan	n.f.III	hand
garnaydh		grenade (see 2.2. above)

2.4.2. Compounds involving derivation

Awardiidnimo	n.f.IV	insubordination
amar	n.m.II	order, instruction
diid	v.r.	refuse (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-nimo	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Caloosha-u-shaqeyste	n.m.VI	mercenary
calool	n.f.III	stomach
-ta	d.a.f.	
> sha	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(vii) and App. II, 3.3.
u	pr.part.	for (see App. IX, 1.4. and 5.1.)
shaqo	n.f.IV	work
(o)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
-ayso	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.2.4.
(o)	ph. alt.	see above
-te	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Dulmarid	n.f.III	over-flight
dul	n.f.III	top
mar	v.r.	pass (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-id	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Hoos-u-dhigid	n.f.III	demotion
hoos	n.f.III	bottom
u	pr.part.	towards (see App. IX, 1.4. and 5.4.)
dhig	v.r.	place (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-id	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Isuqaris	n.m.II	camouflage
is	ref.pr.	itself, oneself
u	pr.part.	for (see App. IX, 1.4. and 5.1.)
qar	v.r.	be hidden (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-s	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Kasaarid	n.f.III	withdrawal (c.f. <u>Kasaarid</u> , 15.4.3. below)
ka	pr.part.	from (see App. IX, 1.1. and 2.1.)
saar	v.r.	take out (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-id	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Miinodhige	n.m.VI	mine-layer
miino	n.f.IV	mine (see 2.2. above)
dhig	v.r.	place (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Miinoxaaqe	n.m.VI	mine-sweeper
miino	n.f.IV	see above
xaaq	v.r.	sweep (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Nabadsugid	n.f.III	security
nabad	n.f.III	peace
sug	v.r.	secure, make firm (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-id	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Weerarcelin	n.f.III	counter-attack
weerar	n.m.II	attack
cel*	v.r.	be returned (see App. IV, 1.1)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

#### 2.4.3. Simple compounds

Dabrid	n.m.II	volley, firing
dab	n.m.I	fire
rid	v.aff.	throw, shoot (see App. V, 3)
Gaashaandhig	n.m.II	defence (c.f. <u>difaac</u> , 2.2. above)
gaashaan	n.m.II	shield
dhig	v.aff.	place (see App. V, 3)
Gaashaanqaad	n.m.II	military service (c.f. <u>shaqada ciidanka</u> , 2.5. below)
gaashaan	n.m.II	see above
qaad	v.aff.	take (see App. V, 3)
Hawlqaran	n.m.II	duty
hawl	n.f.III	work
qaran		nation
Isjir	n.m.II	parade (standing at attention)
is	ref.pr.	oneself
jir	v.aff.	be (see App. V, 3)
Saldhig	n.m.II	base
sal	n.m.I	bottom
dhig	v.aff.	place (see App. V, 3)

Sunindhood	n.m.II	tear-gas (c.f. <u>qiiga ilmaha keena</u> and <u>qiiga indhaha</u> , 2.5. below)
sun	n.f.III	poison
indho	n.m.pl.III	eyes
(o)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
-ood	gen.aff.	see App. VIII, 3 (c)

#### 2.5. Phrase Groups

Ciidamada ammaanka		security forces
ciidamo	n.f.pl.II	forces (see <u>ciidan</u> , 2.1. above)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-da	d.a.f.	see App. II, 3.1.
ammaan	n.m.II	safety, security
-ka	d.a.m.	see App. II, 1
Ciidamada huwanta		combined forces
ciidamada		see above
huwan	n.f.III	group of warriors from different clans undertaking a raid together.
-ta	d.a.f.	see App. II, 1
Ciidamada nabadsugidda		security forces
ciidamada		see above
nabadsugid	n.f.III	security (see 2.4.2. above)
-da	d.a.f.	
Ciidamada qalabka sida		armed forces
ciidamada		see above
qalab	n.m.II	weapons
-ka	d.a.m.	
sida	rel.cls.	which carry (see App. VI, 2)
sid	v.r.	see App. IV, 1.1.
-a	v.ter.	third person singular, present general tense



Ciidamada waddaniyiinta		nationalist forces
ciidamada		see above
waddaniyiin	n.f.coll.III	patriots
waddani	n.m.II	patriot (see 2.2. above)
-y-		junction consonant
-iin	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-ta	d.a.f.	
Ciidanka badda		navy
ciidan	n.m.II	force (see 2.1. above)
-ka	d.a.m.	
bad	n.f.III	sea
-da	d.a.f.	
Ciidanka cirka		air-force
ciidanka		see above
cir	n.m.I	sky
-ka	d.a.m.	
Ciidanka difaaca cirka		air defence force
ciidanka		see above
difaac	n.m.II	defence (see 2.2. above)
-a	d.a.m.	see App. II, 2.3.
cirka		see above
Ciidanka lugta		infantry
ciidanka		see above
lug	n.f.III	foot
-ta	d.a.f.	

Ciidanka madaaficda		artillery
ciidanka		see above
madaafic	n.f.pl.V	artillery (see 2.2. above)
-da	d.a.f.	
Dab dhan		salvo
dab	n.m.I	fire
dhan	adj.	whole, entire
Dayuuradda dagaalka		fighter aircraft
dayuurad	n.f.III	aircraft (see 2.2. above)
-da	d.a.f.	
dagaal	n.m.II	war, fight
-ka	d.a.m.	
Dayuuradda dagaalka ee bambooyinka tuura		fighter bomber
dayuuradda dagaalka		see above
ee	co-ord.	see App. VII, 2
bambooyin	n.m.pl.IV	bombs (see <u>bambo</u> , 2.2. above)
-ka	d.a.m.	
tuura	rel.cls.	which hurls (see App. VI, 2)
tuur	v.r.	see App. IV, 1.1.
-a	v.ter.	third person singular, present general tense
Dhar dagaal		uniform, battledress
dhar	n.m.I	clothes
dagaal	n.m.II	see above
Gaashaanle dhexe		lieutenant-colonel
gaashaanle	n.m.VI	major (see 2.3.3. above)
dhexe	attr.	middle (see Note 55)

Gaashaanle duuliye		squadron-leader
gaashaanle	n.m.VI	see above
duuliye	n.m.VI	pilot (see 2.3.3. above)
Gaashaanle sare		colonel
gaashaanle	n.m.VI	see above
sare	attr.	above (see Note 55)
Gantaallada nukliyeerka		nuclear missiles
gantaallo	n.f.pl.II	missiles rockets (see <u>gantaal</u> , 2.1. above)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
-da	d.a.f.	
nukliyeer	n.m.II	that which is nuclear
-ka	d.a.m.	
Habka dagaalka		strategy (c.f. <u>istaraatiiji</u> , 2.2. and <u>istaraatiijiyaad</u> , 2.3.2. above)
hab	n.m.I	system, method, plan
-ka	d.a.m.	
dagaal	n.m.II	war
-ka	d.a.m.	
Hubka culus		heavy armaments
hub	n.m.I	arms, weapons
-ka	d.a.m.	
culus	r.adj.	heavy (see Note 54)
Hubka halista ah		nuclear weapons
hubka		see above
halis	n.f.III	extreme danger
-ta	d.a.f.	
ah	rel.cls.	which are (see App. VI, 3)

Hubka iswada		guided weapons
hubka		see above
is	ref.pr.	themselves
wada	rel.cls.	which drive (see App. VI, 2)
wad	v.r.	drive (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-a	v.ter.	third person singular, present general tense
Joojinta dabka		cease-fire
joojin	n.f.III	cessation
joog	v.r.	remain (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
> jooji		
g > j	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(v)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-ta	d.a.f.	
dab	n.m.I	fire
-ka	d.a.m.	
Keebka amnanka		safety-catch (of gun)
keeb	n.m.I	trigger (c.f. <u>riishad</u> , 2.2. above)
-ka	d.a.m.	
amaan	n.m.II	safety, security
-ka	d.a.m.	
Kulmiska dabka		concentrated fire
kulmis	n.m.II	meeting, coming together
kulan	v.r.	meet (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
> kulmi		
(a)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)

(cont.)

(cont.)

m > m	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(viii)
-s	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-ka	d.a.m.	
dab	n.m.II	fire
-ka	d.a.m.	
Markabka dagaalka		warship (c.f. <u>miinawaar</u> , 2.2. above)
markab	n.m.V	ship (see 2.2. above)
-ka	d.a.m.	
dagaal	n.m.II	war
-ka	d.a.m.	
Markabka qaada dayuuradaha		aircraft-carrier
markabka		see above
qaada	rel.cls.	which takes (see App. VI, 2)
qaad	v.r.	see App. IV, 1.1.
-a	v.ter.	third person singular, present general tense
dayuurado	n.m.pl.III	aircraft (see <u>dayuurad</u> , 2.2. above)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-ha	d.a.m.	see App. II, 2.2.
Markabka quusa biyaha hoostooda		submarine (c.f. <u>gujis</u> , 2.3.3. above)
markabka		see above
quusa	rel.cls.	which dives
quus	v.r.	see App. III, 1.1.
-a	v.ter.	third person singular present general tense
biyo	n.m.pl.III	water

(cont.)

(cont.)

o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-ha	d.a.m.	
hoos	n.f.III	bottom
-tooda	pos.aff.	see App. VIII, 1
Miinada dabinka		booby-trap mine
miino	n.f.IV	mine (see 2.2. above)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-da	d.a.f.	
dabin	n.m.II	animal trap
-ka	d.a.m.	
Miinada lidka dabbaabadeed		anti-tank mine
miinada		see above
lid	n.m.I	opposition
-ka	d.a.m.	
dabbaabad	n.f.III	tank (see 2.2. above)
-eed	gen.aff.	see App. VIII, 3(b)
Miinada lidka dadka		anti-personnel mine
miinada		see above
lidka		see above
dad	n.m.I	people
-ka	d.a.m.	
Miinada lidka maraakiibta		anti-ship mine
miinada		see above
lidka		see above
maraakiib	n.f.pl.V	ships (see <u>markab</u> , 2.2. above)
-ta	d.a.f.	

Miinada lidka taangiga		anti-tank mine
miinada		see above
lidka		see above
taangi	n.m.II	tank (see 2.2. above)
-ga	d.a.m.	see App. II, 2.1.
Miinada waqtiga		time bomb
miinada		see above
waqti	n.m.II	time
-ga	d.a.m.	
Qiiqa ilmada keena		tear-gas (c.f. <u>sunindhood</u> , 2.4.3. above and <u>qiiqa indhaha</u> below)
qiiq	n.m.I	smoke
-a	d.a.m.	
ilmo	n.f.IV	tears
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-da	d.a.f.	
keena	rel.cls.	which brings (see App. VI, 2)
keen	v.r.	see App. IV, 1.1.
-a	v.ter.	third person singular, present general tense
Qiiqa indhaha		tear-gas (c.f. <u>sunindhood</u> , 2.4.3. above and <u>qiiqa ilmada keena</u> above)
qiiqa		see above
indhoo	n.m.pl.III	eyes
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-ha	d.a.m.	see App. II, 2.2.

Qunbuladda durriyadda		atomic bomb
qunbulad	n.f.III	bomb (see 2.2. above)
-da	d.a.f.	
durriyad	n.f.III	particles, atoms; offspring (c.f. <u>dhurriyat</u> (Ar.))
-da	d.a.f.	
Qunbuladda gacanta		hand-grenade (c.f. <u>gacangarnaydh</u> , 2.4.1. above)
qunbuladda		see above
gacan	n.f.III	hand
-ta	d.a.f.	
Riishadda qarxiyaha		detonator cap
riishad	n.f.III	trigger (see 2.2. above)
-da	d.a.f.	
qarxiye	n.m.VI	detonator (see 2.3.3. above)
e > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-ha	d.a.m.	
Rugta taliska		command post
rug	n.f.III	site, position, abode
-ta	d.a.f.	
talis	n.m.II	command, H.Q. (see 2.3.3. above)
-ka	d.a.m.	
Sarkaalka hoose		junior officer
sarkaal	n.m.V	officer (see 2.2. above)
-ka	d.a.m.	
hoose	attr.	below (see Note 55)

Sarkaalka kuxigeenka		non-commissioned officer
sarkaalk		see above
-ka	d.a.m.	
ku	pr.part.	to (see App. IX, 1.2. and 3.4.)
xigeen	n.m.II	that which is adjacent or related
-ka	d.a.m.	
Sarkaalka sare		senior officer
sarkaalka		see above
sare	attr.	being above (see Note 55)
Sarkaalka xilwadaha		officer commanding
sarkaalka		see above
xilwade	n.m.VI	the person in charge
xil	n.m.I	responsibility, sense of decorum
wad	v.r.	drive, lead (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
e > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-ha	d.a.m.	see App. I, 1.4.
Sarreeye gaas		major-general
sarreeye	n.m.VI	general (see 2.3.3. above)
gaas	n.m.I	division (see 2.1. above)
Sarreeye guud		lieutenant-general
sarreeye	n.m.VI	see above
guud	n.m.I	top
Sarreeye guuto		brigadier-general
sarreeye	n.m.VI	see above
guuto	n.f.IV	brigade (see 2.1. above)

Sawaariikhda lidka dayuuradaña		ground-to-air missiles
sawaariikh	n.f.pl.V	missiles (see <u>sayruukh</u> , 2.2. above)
-da	d.a.f.	
lid	n.m.I	opposition
-ka	d.a.m.	
dayuurado	n.m.pl.III	aircraft (see <u>dayuurad</u> , 2.2. above)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-ha	d.a.m.	
Sawaariikhda lidka taangiyada		anti-tank missiles
sawaariikhda		see above
lidka		see above
taangiyo	n.f.pl.II	tanks (see <u>taangi</u> , 2.2. above)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-da	d.a.f.	
Shaqada ciidanka		military service (c.f. <u>gaashaangaad</u> , 2.4.3. above)
shaqo	n.f.IV	work
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-da	d.a.f.	
ciidan	n.m.II	force (see 2.1. above)
-ka	d.a.m.	
Shucaaca halista ah		radio-active fall-out
shucaac	n.m.II	radiation (see 2.2. above)
-a	d.a.m.	
halis	n.f.III	extreme danger
-ta	d.a.f.	
ah	rel.cls.	which is (see App. VI, 3)

Xambaarada gantaalka		missile launcher
xambaaro	n.f.IV	throw (wrestling)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
-da	d.a.f.	
gantaal	n.m.II	rocket, missile (see 2.1. below)
-ka	d.a.m.	
Xir miinaysan		mine-field
xir	n.m.I	area of scrubland
miinaysan	s.adj.	mined (see Note 53)
miino	n.f.IV	mine (see 2.2. above)
-aysan	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.2.1.
Xoogga Dalka Soomaaliyeed		Somali National Army
xoog	n.m.I	army (see 2.1. above)
-ga	d.a.m.	
dal	n.m.I	country
-ka	d.a.m.	
Soomaali	n.f.coll.III	Somalis
-y-		junction consonant
-eed	gen.aff.	see App. VIII, 3 (b)

### 3. BANKING AND FINANCE

#### 3.1. Semantic Shift

Dhaqaale	n.m.VI	economy, economics o.m. careful tending of livestock
Dheef	n.f.III	dividend, interest o.m. something beneficial (c.f. dheef, 12.1. below)
Duugow	n.m.II	depreciation o.m. state of no longer having original value
Kayd	n.m.II	deposit o.m. something set aside as a reserve (food, fuel etc.)
Tacab	n.m.II	yield, profit o.m. effort, result of an effort

#### 3.2. Borrowings

Bajad	n.m.II	budget (c.f. <u>miisaaniyad</u> below)
Bangi	n.m.II	bank
Caashuur < عَشُور [ashūr] (Ar.)	n.f.III	tax
Dakhli < دَخْل [dakhli] (Ar.)	n.m.II	revenue, income
Istarliin	n.f.III	sterling
Jeeg	n.m.II	cheque
Kharash < خَرَش [kharash] (Ar.)	n.m.II	expenditure
Konto < conto (It.)	n.f.IV	account (c.f. <u>xisaab</u> below)
Maal < مال [māl] (Ar.)	n.m.I	finance; goods, property
Maaliyad < مَالِيَّة [māliyyat] (Ar.)	n.f.III	finance
Misaan < مِيزَان [mizān] (Ar.)	n.m.II	balance
Miisaaniyad < مِيزَانِيَّة [mizāniyyat] (Ar.)	n.f.III	budget (c.f. <u>bajad</u> above)

Raasamaal < راس مال [rāsāmāl] (Ar.)	n.m.II	capital (c.f. <u>xoolamadax</u> , 3.4.5. below)
Samduuq < صندوق [ṣandūq] (Ar.)	n.m.II	fund
Sarrif < صرف [ṣarrif] (Ar.)	n.m.II	exchange
Xisaab < حساب [ḥisāb] (Ar.)	n.f.III	account (c.f. <u>conto</u> above; c.f. also <u>xisaab</u> , 7.2. and 11.2. below)
Xisaabaad < حسابة [ḥisābat] (Ar.)	n.m.II	accounting, book- keeping

### 3.3. Derivation

#### 3.3.1. Derivation involving borrowing

Xisaabiye	n.m.VI	accountant (c.f. <u>xisaabhaye</u> , 3.4.1. below)
xisaab	n.f.III	account (see 3.2. above)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.3.
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

#### 3.3.2. Simple derivation

Gamacsi	n.m.II	trade
gamac	n.f.III	something which can be sold, not bartered
-si	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

### 3.4. Compounds

#### 3.4.1. Compounds involving borrowings

Cashuur-toos-u-qaad	n.m.II	direct taxing
cashuur	n.f.III	tax (see 3.2. above)
toos	n.m.I	straightness
u	pr.part.	in (see App. IX, 1.4. and 5.2.)
qaad	v.aff.	take (see App. V, 3)

Sarrifdhac	n.m.II	devaluation (c.f. <u>qiimedhac</u> , 3.4.5. below)
sarrif	n.m.II	exchange (see 3.2. above)
dhac	v.aff.	fall (see App. V, 3)
Xisaabhaye	n.m.VI	accountant (c.f. <u>xisaabiye</u> , 3.3.1. above)
xisaab	n.f.III	account (see 3.2. above)
-haye	n.aff.	see App. V, 2

#### 3.4.2. Compounds involving derivation

Hormaris	n.m.II	advance
hor	n.f.III	front part
mar	v.r.	pass (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-s	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Korsocod	n.m.II	interest
kor	n.m.I	top
soco	v.r.	go (see App. IV, 1.2.5.(e))
-d	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Lacagmaamulid	n.f.III	financial administration
lacag	n.f.III	money
maamul	v.r.	look after (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-id	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

### 3.4.3. Compounds involving semantic shift and derivation

Dhaqaalaweyne	n.m.VI	macro-economics
dhaqaale	n.m.VI	economics (see 3.1. above)
e > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-weyn	r.adj.	big (see Note 54)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Dhaqaalayare	n.m.VI	micro-economics
dhaqaala		see above
yar	r.adj.	small (see Note 54)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

### 3.4.4. Compounds involving borrowings and derivation

Kharashdhaafin	n.f.III	over-expenditure
kharash	n.m.II	expenditure (see 3.2. above)
dhaaf	v.r.	pass beyond (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Maalgelin	n.f.III	investment
maal	n.m.I	finance (see 3.2. above)
gal	v.r.	enter (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
>geli		
a > e	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(ii)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Miisaaniyaddhig	n.m.II	budgeting
miisaaniyad	n.f.III	budget (see 3.2. above)
dhig	v.aff.	place (see App. V, 3)

Xisaabcelin	n.f.III	return (i.e. a statement of expenditure as set against the vote)
xisaab	n.f.III	account (see 3.2. above)
cel <sup>m</sup>	v.r.	be returned (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Xisaabsimid	n.f.III	balancing (of accounts)
xisaab	n.f.III	see above
sin	v.r.	be level (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-id	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
> simi		
n > m	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(viii)

### 3.4.5. Simple compounds

Buuglacag	n.f.III	cashbook, ledger
buug	n.m.I	book
lacag		money
Dheellitir	n.m.II	balance
dhelli	n.m.II	unevenly distributed load
-tir	v.aff.	erase (see App. V, 3)
Lacaghaye	n.m.VI	cashier
lacag	n.f.III	money
haye	n.aff.	see App. V, 2



qiimedhac	n.m.II	devaluation (c.f. <u>sarrifdhac</u> 3.4.1. above)
qiime	n.m.II	price
dhac	v.aff.	fall (see App. V, 3)
Xoolamada	n.m.II	capital (c.f. <u>raasammaal</u> , 3.2. above)
xoolo	n.m.II	property (goods or livestock)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
madax		head

### 3.5. Phrase Groups

Cashuurta dalka		state revenue
cashuur	n.f.III	tax (see 3.2. above)
-ta	d.a.f.	
dal	n.m.I	country
-ka	d.a.m.	
Cashuurta moorka		stamp duty
cashuurta		see above
moor	n.m.I	sealing-wax
-ka	d.a.m.	
Dakhliga ummadda		national revenue
dakhli	n.m.II	income, revenue (see 3.2. above)
-ga	d.a.m.	
ummad	n.f.III	nation
-da	d.a.f.	

Deynsadda ummadda		national debt
deynsad	n.f.III	debt incurred for one's own benefit
deyn	n.f.III	debt
-so	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.10.
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
-d	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-da	d.a.f.	
ummad	n.f.III	nation
-da	d.a.f.	
Dheellitirka ganacsiga		overseas balance of payments
debbedda		balance (see 3.4.5.above)
dheellitir	n.m.II	
-ka	d.a.m.	
ganacsi	n.m.II	trade (see 3.3.2. above)
-ga	d.a.m.	
debbed	n.f.III	exterior, outside
-da	d.a.f.	
Habka dhaqaalaha		economic model
hab	n.m.I	system, method, plan
-ka	d.a.m.	
dhaqaale	n.m.VI	economy (see 3.1. above)
e > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
-ha	d.a.m.	

Habka laba qoraalka ah		double entry accounting system
habka		see above
laba	n.f.III	two
qoraal	n.m.II	writing
qor	v.r.	write (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-aal	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-ka	d.a.m.	
ah	rel.cls.	which is (see App. VI, 3)
Habka midaynta xisaabaadka		unified accounting system
habka		see above
midayn	n.f.III	unity, oneness
mid	n.f.III	one
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.2.
-ayn	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-ta	d.a.f.	
xisaabaad	n.m.II	accounting (see 3.2. above)
-ka	d.a.m.	
Jeeqga socotada		travellers' cheque
jeeg	n.m.I	cheque (see 3.2. above)
-ga	d.a.m.	
socoto	n.f.coll.IV	people who travel from place to place
soco	v.r.	go, walk (see App. IV, 1.2.5.(e))
-to	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-da	d.a.f.	

Kharashka dhabta ah		actual expenditure
kharash	n.m.II	expenditure (see 3.2. above)
-ka	d.a.m.	
dhab	n.f.III	truth
-ta	d.a.f.	
ah	rel.cl.	which is (see App. VI, 3)
Korsocod culus		compound interest
korsocod	n.m.II	interest (see 3.4.2. above)
culus	r.adj.	heavy (see Note 54)
Korsocod fudud		simple interest
korsocod	n.m.II	see above
fudud	adj.	light
Laanta Cashuurta Berriga		Inland Revenue Department
laan	n.f.III	section, department (c.f. <u>laan</u> , 7.1. and 15.1. below)
-ta	d.a.f.	
cashuur	n.f.III	tax (see 3.2. above)
-ta	d.a.f.	
berri	n.m.II	country, land
-ga	d.a.m.	
Lacag adag		hard currency
lacag	n.f.III	money
adag	r.adj.	hard (see note 54)

Miisaanka maaliyadda		balance of budget
miisaan	n.m.II	balance (see 3.2. above)
-ka	d.a.m.	
maaliyad	n.f.III	finance (see 3.2. above)
-da	d.a.f.	
Nidaanka guud ee xisaabaadka		general accounting system
nidaam	n.m.II	discipline
-ka	d.a.m.	
guud	adj.	general
ee	co-ord.	see App. VII, 2
xisaabaad	n.m.II	accounting (see 3.2. above)
-ka	d.a.m.	
Nidaanka lacagta		monetary system
nidaanka		see above
lacag	n.f.III	money
-ta	d.a.f.	
Sarrif shisheeye		foreign exchange
sarrif	n.m.II	exchange (see 3.2. above)
shisheeye	n.m.VI	something which is foreign
shishe	attr.	on that side (see Note 55)
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 4.1.1.
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Tacabweynaha guriga		gross domestic product
Tacabweyne	n.m.VI	total yield or production
tacab	n.m.II	yield (see 3.1. above)
weyn	r.adj.	big (see Note 54)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
e > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-ha	d.a.m.	
guri	n.m.II	house
-ga	d.a.m.	
Tacabweynaha ummadda		gross national product
tacabweynaha		see above
ummad	n.f.III	nation
-da	d.a.f.	
Xaashida lacagbixinta		voucher
xaashi	n.f.III	document
-da	d.a.f.	
lacag	n.f.III	money
bax	v.r.	go out, leave (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
> bixi		
a > i	ph. alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(ii)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-ta	d.a.m.	

#### 4. CHEMISTRY

##### 4.1. Semantic Shift

Astaan	n.f.III	symbol o.m. mark, sign (c.f. <u>astaan</u> , 9.1. and 12.1. below; c.f. also <u>summad</u> below)
Culays	n.m.II	weight o.m. heaviness (c.f. <u>culays</u> , 14.1. and 17.1. below)
Dhuun	n.f.III	tube o.m. pipe, reed (c.f. <u>dhuun</u> , 2.1. above)
Hoor	n.m.I	liquid o.m. rainfall
Kaftoon	n.m.II	valency o.m. self-sufficiency
Muuq	n.m.II	characteristic o.m. face, appearance
Naanays	n.f.III	formula o.m. nickname
Neef	n.f.III	gas o.m. breathe
Summad	n.f.III	symbol o.m. brand (on animal) (c.f. <u>astaan</u> above)
Weji	n.m.II	state o.m. face

##### 4.2. Borrowings

Ammoniye	n.m.VI	ammonia
Asaydh	n.f.III	acid
Atam	n.m.II	atom
Botaash	n.m.II	potash
Fosfaad	n.m.II	phosphate
Fosfoor	n.m.II	phosphorus

Haydarojiin	n.m.II	hydrogen
Istarontiyam	n.m.II	strontium
Kaalsiyam	n.m.II	calcium
Karbon	n.m.II	carbon
Kimiko < <u>chimica</u> (It.)	n.f.IV	chemistry
Kimisteri	n.m.II	chemistry
Kobar	n.m.II	copper
Koroom	n.m.II	chrome
Maatar	n.m.II	matter
Magnisiyam	n.m.II	magnesium
Manganilis	n.m.II	manganese
Molikiyuul	n.m.II	molecule
Murkuuri	n.m.II	mercury
Nayitaroojiin	n.m.II	nitrogen
Nikkel	n.m.II	nickel
Ogsajiin	n.m.II	oxygen
Ogsaydh	n.m.II	oxide
Salfar	n.m.II	sulphur
Silikoon	n.m.II	silicon
Sink	n.m.I	zinc
Sodiyam	n.m.II	sodium
Yuraaniyam	n.m.II	uranium

##### 4.3. Derivation

###### 4.3.1. Simple Derivation

Adke	n.m.VI	solid
adag	r.adj.	strong, hard (see Note 54)
>adk	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv) and (vi)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Curiye	n.m.VI	element
cur *	v.r.	be started for the first time (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Mile	n.m.VI	solvent
mil	v.r.	melt (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Nungid	n.f.III	absorption
nuug	v.r.	suck (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-id	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Qeexid	n.f.III	analysis (c.f. <u>qeexid</u> , 5.3.3. below)
qeex	v.r.	explain (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-id	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Uumiyoobid	n.f.III	gasification
uumi	n.m.II	steam, vapour
-y-		junction consonant
-ow	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.7.(a)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
> uumiyoobi		
ow > oobi	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(xiii)
-d	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

4.4. Compounds4.4.1. Compound involving derivation

Oomaarbaxsi	n.m.II	evaporation
oomaar	n.m.II	vapour
baxsi	n.m.II	act of leaving
bax	v.r.	go out, leave (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-si	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

4.4.2. Simple compounds

Falgal	n.m.II	reaction
fal	n.m.I	deed, act
gal	v.aff.	enter (see App. V, 3)
Iskudhis	n.m.II	compound
is	ref.pr.	itself
ku	pr.part.	on (see App. IX, 1.2. and 3.3.)
dhis	v.aff.	build (see App. V, 3)
Iskujir	n.m.II	mixture
is	ref.pr.	itself
ku	pr.part.	in (see App. IX, 1.2. and 3.2.)
jir	v.aff.	be (see App. V, 3)
Kalabax	n.m.II	decomposition
kala	adv.	apart, separately
bax	v.aff.	go out, leave, (see App. V, 3)
Kaladhig	n.m.II	separation
kala	adv.	see above
dhig	v.aff.	place (see App. V, 3)

Shaybaar	n.m.II	laboratory (c.f. <u>rugta baarista</u> , 4.5. below)
shay	n.m.I	thing (c.f. شي [shey] (Ar.))
baar	v.aff.	seek (see App. V, 3)

#### 4.5. Phrase Groups

Culays atam		atomic weight
culays	n.m.II	weight (see 4.1. above)
atam	n.m.II	atom (see 4.2. above)
Dhuun hubsasho		test-tube
dhuun	n.f.III	tube
hubsasho	n.f.IV	act of ascertaining
hub	v.r.	ascertain (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-so	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.11(d)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-sho	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Neefta wahsiga		inert gas
neef	n.f.III	gas (see 4.1. above)
-ta	d.a.f.	
wahsi	n.m.II	lassitude, disinclination
-ga	d.a.m.	
Rugta baarista		laboratory, research centre (c.f. <u>shaybaar</u> , 4.4.2. above)
rug	n.f.III	site, location, position
-ta	d.a.f.	
baaris	n.f.III	investigation, research
baar	v.r.	seek (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-s	der.aff	see App. V, 1
-ta	d.a.f.	

Tiro atam		atomic number
tiro	n.f.IV	number
atam	n.m.II	atom (see 4.2. above)

## 5. COMMERCE AND INDUSTRY

### 5.1. Semantic Shift

Baahi	n.f.III	demand o.m. need
Farsamo	n.f.IV	technology o.m. skill (c.f. <u>teknooloji</u> , 5.2. and <u>teknoolojiyad</u> , 5.3.2. above)
Sahan	n.m.II	survey o.m. reconnaissance party
Sanco	n.f.IV	industry o.m. craft
Shurug	n.m.II	partner o.m. companion
Tartan	n.m.II	competition o.m. race
Xarar	n.m.II	trademark o.m. pattern, decoration (c.f. <u>summadda ganacsiga</u> , 5.5. below)

### 5.2. Borrowings

Aalad < آلا [ālād] (Ar.)	n.f.III	equipment
Baafiliyoon	n.m.II	stand (at exhibition) (c.f. <u>golka bandhigga</u> , 5.5. below)
Kambani	n.m.II	company (c.f. <u>shirkad</u> below)
Kataloogo < <u>catalogo</u> (It.)	n.f.IV	catalogue (c.f. <u>daliilhaye</u> , 5.4.5.)
Makhaasir < مخاسير [makhāsir] (Ar.)	n.m.II	liability
Makiinad < مكنينة [makīnat] (Ar.)	n.f.III	machine
Manifesti	n.m.II	manifest (c.f. <u>geexid</u> , 5.3.3. below)
Mashruuc < مشروع [mashrūʿ] (Ar.)	n.m.II	project
Monobooli	n.m.II	monopoly

Naqad < نقد [naqd] (Ar.)	n.m.II	money
Rasiidh	n.m.II	receipt
Riig	n.m.I	(oil) rig
Sambaal	n.m.II	sample (c.f. <u>munad badeecadeed</u> , 5.5. below)
Shirkad < شركة [shirkat] (Ar.)	n.f.III	company (c.f. <u>kambani</u> above)
Suuq < سوق [ṣūq] (Ar.)	n.m.II	market
Teknooloji	n.m.II	technology (c.f. <u>farsamo</u> , 5.1. above and <u>teknoolojiyad</u> , 5.3.2. below)
Tendar	n.m.II	tender (c.f. <u>tartangal</u> , 5.4.1. below)
Wakiil < وكيل [wakil] (Ar.)	n.m.II	representative
Warqad < ورقة [warqat] (Ar.)	n.f.III	letter
Warshad < ورشة [warshat] (Ar.)	n.f.III	factory

### 5.3. Derivation

#### 5.3.1. Derivation involving semantic shift

Farsamayn	n.f.III	manufacturing
farsamo	n.f.IV	technology (see 5.1. above)
(o)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.2.
-ayn	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Shurugnimo	n.f.IV	partnership
shurug	n.m.II	partner (see 5.1. above)
-nimo	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Tartame	n.m.VI	competitor
tartan	n.m.II	competition (see 5.1. above)
n > m	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4. (viii)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

### 5.3.2. Derivation involving borrowings

Makiinadays	n.f.III	mechanisation
makiinad	n.f.III	machine (see 5.2. above)
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.2.
-ays	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Teknoolojiyad	n.f.III	technology (c.f. <u>farsamo</u> , 5.1. above)
teknooloji	n.m.II	technology (see 5.2. above)
-yad	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Warahadayn	n.f.III	industrialisation
warahad	n.f.III	factory (see 5.2. above)
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.2.
-ayn	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

### 5.3.3. Simple derivation

Bixin	n.f.III	supply
bax	v.r.	go out, leave (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
> bixi		
a > i	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(ii)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Caddayn	n.f.III	certificate, declaration (c.f. <u>caddayn</u> , 10.3.1. below)
cad	r.adj.	white, clear (see Note 54)
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 3.2.2.
> caddee		
-ayn	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Dalbasho	n.f.IV	order
dalab	v.r.	apply, request (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-o	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.5.(a)
> dalbo		
(a)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-sho	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Dhimid	n.f.III	reduction of price
dhin	v.r.	reduce (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-id	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
> dhimi		
n > m	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(viii)
Dhoofin	n.f.III	exporting
dhoof	v.r.	travel great distances in vehicle (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Dhoofiye	n.m.VI	exporter
dhoofi	v.r. + ext.	see above
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Gelin	n.f.III	importing (c.f. <u>soogelin</u> , 5.4.3. and <u>maalsoodejin</u> , 5.4.4. below)
gal	v.r.	enter (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
> geli		
a > e	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(ii)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1



Qeexid	n.f.III	manifest, customs declaration (c.f. <u>manifesti</u> , 5.2. above; c.f. also <u>qeexid</u> , 4.3.1. above)
qeex	v.r.	explain (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-id	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Tolayn	n.f.III	nationalisation
tol	n.m.I	distant relation
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.2.
-ayn	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

#### 5.4. Compounds

##### 5.4.1. Compounds involving semantic shift

Farsano-aqoon	n.f.III	technological 'know-how'
farsano	n.f.IV	technology (see 5.1. above)
aqoon		knowledge
Sanco-aqoon	n.f.III	industrial 'know-how'
sanco	n.f.IV	industry (see 5.1. above)
aqoon		see above
Tartangal	n.m.II	tender (c.f. <u>tendar</u> , 5.2. above)
tartan	n.m.II	competition (see 5.1. above)
gal	v.aff.	enter (see App. V, 3)

##### 5.4.2. Compound involving borrowings

Maalceedhin	n.m.II	raw material (c.f. <u>alaab ceedhin</u> , 5.5. below)
maal	n.m.I	goods, property (see 3.2. above)
ceedhin		unripeness, rawness

##### 5.4.3. Compounds involving derivation

Ganaccsidhac	n.m.II	depression
ganacsi	n.m.II	trade (see 3.3.2. above)
dhac	v.aff.	fall (see App. V, 3)
Kabixin	n.f.III	output (c.f. <u>soosaarid</u> below)
ka	pr.part.	from (see App. IX, 1.1. and 2.1.)
bixin		see <u>bixin</u> , 5.3.3. above
Kadhimid	n.f.III	discount
ka	pr.part.	see above
dhimid		see <u>dhimid</u> , 5.3.3. above
Kawarramid	n.f.III	report
ka	pr.part.	see above
war	n.m.I	news
-an	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.1.
> warran		
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
> warrami		
n > m	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(viii)
-d	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Qorkasoodejin	n.f.III	bill of lading (c.f. <u>wargadda rarka</u> , 5.5. below)
qor	n.m.I	writing
ka	pr.part.	see above
soo	adv.	in this direction
deg	v.r.	descend (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
> deji		
g > j	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(v)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Sicirgeyn	n.f.III	tarrif
sicir	n.m.II	price
gee	v.r.	bring together (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
i > y		
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Soodejiye	n.m.VI	importer
soo	adv.	in this direction
deji	v.r. + ext.	see <u>gorkasoodejin</u> above
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Soogelin	n.f.III	importing (c.f. <u>maalsoodejin</u> , 5.4.4. below)
soo	adv.	see above
gelin		see <u>gelin</u> , 5.3.3. above
Soosaarid	n.f.III	production (c.f. <u>kabixin</u> above)
soo	adv.	see above
saar	v.r.	take out (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-id	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Suuragelin	n.f.III	feasibility, viability
suuro	n.m.pl.III	possibility
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
gelin		see <u>gelin</u> , 5.3.3. above
Waxsoosaarid	n.f.III	productivity (c.f. <u>tacabdhil</u> , 5.4.5. below)
wax	n.m.II	thing
soosaarid		see <u>soosaarid</u> above

#### 5.4.4. Compounds involving borrowings and derivation

Maalsoodejin	n.f.III	importing (c.f. <u>gelin</u> , 5.3.3. and <u>soogelin</u> 5.4.3. above)
maal	n.m.I	goods (see 3.2. above)
soodejin		see <u>gorkasoodejin</u> , 5.4.3. above
Suuggayn	n.f.III	marketing
suuq	n.m.II	market (see 5.2. above)
gayn		see <u>sicirgayn</u> , 5.4.3. above
Suuggelin	n.m.II	marketing
suuq	n.m.II	see above
gelin		see <u>gelin</u> , 5.3.3. above

#### 5.4.5. Simple compounds

Bandhig	n.m.II	exhibition
ban	n.m.I	plateau, stage
dhig	v.aff.	place (see App. V, 3)
Daliilhaye	n.m.VI	catalogue (c.f. <u>kataloogo</u> , 5.2. above)
daliil	n.m.II	evidence
haye	n.aff.	see App. V, 2
Isdhin	n.m.II	deficit
is	ref.pr.	itself
dhin	v.aff.	reduce (see App. V, 3)
Korudhig	n.m.II	increase, rise
kor	n.m.I	top
u	pr.part.	towards (see App. IX, 1.4. and 5.4.)
dhig	v.aff.	place (see App. V, 3)

Naqadsogal	n.m.II	cash flow
naqad	n.m.II	money (see 5.2. above)
soo	adv.	in this direction
gal	v.aff.	enter (see App. V, 3)
Qiyaasdhin	n.m.II	under-estimation
qiyaas	n.f.III	act of measuring, assessing
dhin	v.aff.	reduce (see App. V, 3)
Tacabdhah	n.m.II	productivity (c.f. <u>waxsoosaarid</u> , 5.4.3. above)
tacab	n.m.II	effort
dhal	v.aff.	bear, give birth to (see App. V, 3)

#### 5.5. Phrase Groups

Alaab ceedhin		raw material (c.f. <u>maalceedhin</u> , 5.4.2. above)
alaab	n.f.III	goods, equipment
ceedhin	n.m.II	unripeness, rawness
Baaq qandaraas		invitation to tender
baaq	n.m.I	summoning from afar
qandaraas	n.m.II	contract
Carwo ganacsi		trade fair
carwo	n.f.IV	large market
ganacsi	n.m.II	trade (see 3.3.2. above)
Cashuur furdadeed		customs duty
cashuur	n.f.III	tax (see 3.2. above)
furdad	n.f.III	quay, wharf
-eed	gen.aff.	see App. VIII, 3(b)

Cashuur siigal		export duty
cashuur	n.f.III	see above
siigal	n.m.II	act of going out
sii	adv.	in that direction
gal	v.aff.	enter (see App. V, 3)
Cashuur soogal		import duty
cashuur	n.f.III	see above
soogal	n.m.II	act of coming in
soo	adv.	in this direction
gal	v.aff.	see above
Diiwaanka shirkadaha		company register
diiwaan	n.m.II	ledger
-ka	d.a.m.	
shirkado	n.m.pl.III	companies (see <u>shirkad</u> , 5.2. above)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
-ha	d.a.m.	
Ganacsi daahsoon		invisible trade
ganacsi	n.m.II	trade (see 3.3.2. above)
daahsoon	s.adj.	veiled (see Note 53)
daah	n.m.II	door-screen, curtain
-soon	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.11
Ganacsi deggan		stable trade
ganacsi	n.m.II	see above
deggan	v.adj.	settled (see Note 52)
deg	v.r.	descend, halt (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-an	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.2.(a) and Note 57

Ganacsi kooban		wholesale trade
ganacsi	n.m.II	see above
kooban	v.adj.	inclusive (see Note 52)
koob	v.r.	include (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-an	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.2.(a)
Ganacsi muuqda		visible trade
ganacsi	n.m.II	see above
muuqda	rel.cls.	which is apparent (see App. VI, 2)
muuq	v.r.	seem, appear (see App. V, 1.1.)
-o	v.ext.	see App. V, 1.2.5.(c)
(o)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
-da	v.ter.	third person singular, present general tense
Golaha ganacsiga		trade centre
gole	n.m.VI	meeting place (c.f. <u>gole</u> , 15.1. below)
e > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
-ha	d.a.m.	
ganacsi	n.m.II	see above
-ga	d.a.m.	
Guddiga qandaraaska		tender board
guddi	n.m.II	committee, jury (c.f. <u>guddi</u> , 15.1. below)
-ga	d.a.m.	
qandaraas	n.m.II	contract
-ka	d.a.m.	
Habka ganacsiga		trade pattern
hab	n.m.I	method, pattern
-ka	d.a.m.	
ganacsi	n.m.II	trade (see 3.2.2. above)
-ga	d.a.m.	

Heerka qiimaha		price level
heer	n.m.I	stage
-ka	d.a.m.	
qiime	n.m.II	price, value
e > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-ha	d.a.m.	
Heshiiska ganacsiga		trade agreement
heshiis	n.m.II	reconciliation
-ka	d.a.m.	
ganacsi	n.m.II	trade (see 3.3.2 above)
-ga	d.a.m.	
Horumarinta ganacsiga		trade promotion
hor	n.f.III	front
u	pr.part.	towards (see App. IX, 1.5. and 5.4.)
mar	v.r.	pass (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-ta	d.a.f.	
ganacsiga		see above
Isdhinka ganacsiga		trade deficit
isdhin	n.m.II	deficit (see 5.4.5. above)
-ka	d.a.m.	
ganacsiga		see above
Kawarramidda sancada		technical report
kawarramid		report (see 5.4.3. above)
-da	d.a.f.	
sanco	n.f.IV	industry (see 5.1. above)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
-da	d.a.f.	

Muunad badeecadeed		sample (c.f. <u>sambaal</u> , 5.2. above)
muunad	n.f.III	kind, sort, type
badeecad	n.f.III	goods, merchandise
-eed	gen.aff.	see App. VIII, 3(b)
Naqshadaha dhismaha		specifications
naqshado	n.m.pl.III	ornamentation, engraving
o > a	ph.a t.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-ha	d.a.m.	
dhismo	n.m.pl.III	building, structure
o > a	ph.alt.	see above
-ha	d.a.m.	
Ogaysiinta diridda		dispatch note
ogaysiin	n.f.III	announcement
og	attr.v.	know (see App. IV, 4.1.1.)
-aysii	v.ext.	see App. IV, 4.2.1.
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-ta	d.a.f.	
dirid	n.f.III	act of sending
dir	v.r.	send (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-d	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-da	d.a.f.	
Ogaysiinta lacagbixinta		notice of payment
ogaysiinta		see above
lacagbixinta		see <u>xaashida lacagbixinta</u> , 3.5. above

Qiimaysta mashruuca		project appraisal
qiimays	n.f.III	evaluation
qiime	n.m.II	value, price
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.2.
-ays	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-ta	d.a.f.	
mashruuc	n.m.II	project (see 5.2. above)
-a	d.a.m.	
Qiime beddelma		variable price
qiime	n.m.II	see above
beddelma	rel.cls.	which becomes changed (see App. VI, 2)
beddel	v.r.	change (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-an	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.2.(a)
(a)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
n > m	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(viii)
-a	v.ter.	third person singular, present general tense
Qiime caddaysan		declared value
qiime	n.m.II	see above
caddaysan	adj.	explained
cad	r.adj.	white, clear (see Note 54)
-aysan	v.ext.	see App. IV, 3.3.1.
Qiime go'an		fixed price
qiime	n.m.II	see above
go'an	v.adj.	cut at a fixed point (see Note 52)
go'	v.r.	cut, snap (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-an	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.2.(a)

Qiime jooga		present value
qiime	n.m.II	see above
jooga	rel.cls.	which is (see App. VI, 2)
joog	v.r.	be (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-a	v.ter.	third person masculine singular present general tense
Qiime mideed		unit price
qiime	n.m.II	see above
mideed		of one
mid	n.f.III	one
-eed	gen.aff.	see App. VIII, 3.(b)
Qiime saldhig ah		base price
qiime	n.m.II	see above
saldhig	n.m.II	base (see 2.3.1. above)
ah	rel.cls.	which is (see App. VI, 3)
Qiime soo socda		future cost
qiime	n.m.II	see above
soo	adv.	in this direction
socda	rel.cls.	which is going (see App. VI, 2)
soco	v.r.	go, walk (see App. IV, 1.2.5.(e))
(o)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
-da	v.ter.	third person masculine singular present general tense
Qiime xoolamadax		capital cost
qiime	n.m.II	see above
xoolamadax	n.m.II	capital (see 3.4.5. above)

Qolka bandhigga		stand (at exhibition) (c.f. <u>baafiliyoona</u> , 5.2. above)
qol	n.m.I	room
-ka	d.a.m.	
bandhig	n.m.II	exhibition (see 5.4.5. above)
-ga	d.a.m.	
Qoqobka ganacsiga		trade barrier
qoqob	n.m.II	partition, boundary fence (c.f. <u>qoqob</u> , 11.1. below)
-ka	d.a.m.	
ganacsi	n.m.II	trade (see 3.3.2. above)
-ga	d.a.m.	
Rogaalka lacagta		turnover
rogaal	n.m.II	act of turning
rog	v.r.	turn (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-aal	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-ka	d.a.m.	
lacag	n.f.III	money
-ta	d.a.f.	
Rugta ganacsiga		chamber of commerce
rug	n.f.III	position, location, site
-ta	d.a.f.	
ganacsi	n.m.II	trade (see 3.3.2. above)
-ga	d.a.m.	
Sahan bilaw		preliminary survey
sahan	n.m.II	survey (see 5.1. above)
bilaw	n.m.II	beginning

Sahan farsamo		technical survey
sahan	n.m.II	see above
farsamo	n.f.IV	technology (see 5.1. above)
Sahan ganacsi		trade mission
sahan	n.m.II	see above
ganacsi	n.m.II	trade (see 3.3.2. above)
Saliid ceedhin		crude oil
saliid	n.f.III	oil
ceedhin	n.m.II	unripeness, rawness
Sanco culus		heavy industry
sanco	n.f.IV	industry (see 5.1. above)
culus	r.adj.	heavy (see Note 54)
Sanco fudud		light industry
sanco	n.f.IV	see above
fudud	adj.	light
Sanco khafiif ah		light industry
sanco	n.f.IV	see above
khafiif	n.m.II	lightness (c.f. خفيف [khafiif] (Ar.))
ah	rel.cls.	which is (see App. VI, 3)
Shirkad caami ah		public company
shirkad	n.f.III	company (see 5.2. above)
caami	n.m.I	general public (c.f. عام [ām] (Ar.))
ah	rel.cls.	which is (see App. VI, 3)

Sicirka jimalada		wholesale price
sicir	n.m.II	price
-ka	d.a.m.	
jimalo	n.f.IV	addition (c.f. جملة [jumlat] (Ar.))
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-da	d.a.f.	
Sicir loollan		competitive price
sicir		see above
loollan	s.adj.	competing (see Note 53)
lool	n.m.I	a children's game which involves competition
-an	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.1. and Note 57
Sicirka suuqa		market price
sicir	n.m.II	see above
-ka	d.a.m.	
suuq	n.m.II	market (see 5.2. above)
-a	d.a.m.	
Sicirka warshadda		factory price
sicir	n.m.II	see above
-ka	d.a.m.	
warshad	n.f.III	factory (see 5.2. above)
-da	d.a.f.	
Summadda ganacsiga		trademark, patent (c.f. <u>xarar</u> , 5.1. above)
summad	n.f.III	brand (on livestock)
-da	d.a.f.	
ganacsi	n.m.II	trade (see 3.3.2. above)
-ga	d.a.m.	

Tusaalayska sicirka		price index
tusaalays	n.m.II	display
tus	v.r.	show (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-aal	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.2.
-ays	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-ka	d.a.m.	
sicir	n.m.II	price
-ka	d.a.m.	
Warka shaqofulinta		progress report
war	n.m.I	news, report
-ka	d.a.m.	
shaqofulin	n.f.III	progress, accomplishment of work
shaqo	n.f.IV	work
ful	v.r.	accomplish (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-ta	d.a.f.	
Warqadda kalsoonaanta		letter of credit
warqad	n.f.III	letter (see 5.2. above)
-da	d.a.f.	
kalsoonaan	n.f.III	confidence
kal	n.m.I	trust
-soon	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.11
-aan	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-ta	d.a.f.	

Warqadda rarka		bill of lading
warqadda		(c.f. <u>gorkasooodejin</u> , 5.4.3. above)
rar	n.m.I	see above
-ka	d.a.m.	load
Warshadda safaynta saliidda		oil refinery
warshad	n.f.III	factory (see 5.2. above)
-da	d.a.f.	
safayn	n.f.III	cleaning
saf	adj.	clean (see App. IV, 3.1.)
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 3.2.2.
-ayn	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-ta	d.a.f.	
saliid	n.f.III	oil
-da	d.a.f.	
Xaashida caddaynta aslinimada		certificate of origin
xaashi	n.f.III	document
-da	d.a.f.	
caddayn	n.f.III	certificate (see 5.3.3. above)
-ta	d.a.f.	
aslinimo	n.f.III	origin
asli	n.m.II	origin
-nimo	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-da	d.a.f.	



Xaashida haraaga		balance sheet
xaashida		see above
haraa	n.m.II	remainder
har	v.ext.	remain, be left over (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-aa	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-ga	d.a.m.	
Xaashida sicirka ganacsiga		commercial invoice
xaashida		see above
sicir	n.m.II	price
-ka	d.a.m.	
ganacsi	n.m.II	trade (see 3.3.2. above)
-ga	d.a.m.	

## 6. COMMUNICATIONS

### 6.1. Semantic Shift

Hir	n.m.I	wave (radio) o.m. wave (sea) (c.f. <u>mawjad</u> , 6.2. below)
-----	-------	--

### 6.2. Borrowings

Anteenoo	<	<u>antenna</u>	(It.)	n.f.IV	aerial
Boosto	<	<u>posta</u>	(It.)	n.f.IV	post
Firikuwansi				n.m.II	frequency
Idaacad	<	إذاعة [idhā'a] (Ar.)		n.m.III	broadcast
Makarafoon				n.m.II	microphone
Mawjad	<	موجة [mawjat] (Ar.)		n.f.III	radio wave (c.f. <u>hir</u> , 6.1. above)
Moodulaashoon				n.m.II	modulation
Mooris				n.m.II	morse
Raadar				n.m.II	radar
Raadiye				n.m.VI	radio
Radiyow				n.m.II	radio
Shentraal	<	<u>centrale</u>	(It.)	n.m.II	telephone exchange (c.f. <u>beddelid</u> , 6.3.2.)
Signaal				n.m.II	signal
Taransistar				n.m.II	transistor
Teleberentar				n.m.II	teleprinter
Telefisyoona				n.m.II	television
Telefoon				n.m.II	telephone
Telefooniste	<	<u>telefonista</u>	(It.)	n.m.VI	telephone-operator
Telekis				n.m.II	telex

### 6.3. Derivation

#### 6.3.1. Derivation involving borrowings

Telefoonayste	n.m.VI	telephone operator (c.f. <u>telefoonliste</u> , 6.2. above)
telefoon	n.m.II	telephone (see 6.2. above)
-ayso	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.2.3.
(o)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
-te	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Telefoonaystenimo	n.f.IV	skill in being a telephone operator
telefoonayste	n.m.VI	see above
-nimo	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

#### 6.3.2. Simple derivation

Beddelid	n.f.III	telephone exchange (c.f. <u>shentraal</u> , 6.2. above)
beddel	v.r.	change (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-id	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Dhegayste	n.m.VI	listener
dheg	n.f.III	ear
-ayso	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.2.3.
(o)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
-te	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Dire	n.m.VI	transmitter
dir	v.r.	send (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Ogaysiin	n.f.III	announcement
og	attr.v.	know (see App. IV, 4.1.1.)
-aysii	v.ext.	see App. IV, 4.2.1.
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Xoojiye	n.m.VI	amplifier
xoog	n.m.I	strength
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.3.
> xooji		
g > j	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(v)
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

### 6.4. Compounds

#### 6.4.1. Compound involving semantic shift

Hirbaac	n.m.II	wavelength
hir	n.m.I	wave (see 6.1. above)
baac	v.aff.	measure length (see App. V, 3)

#### 6.4.2. Compounds involving derivation

Codweyneeye	n.m.VI	loudspeaker
cod	n.m.I	voice
weyn	r.adj.	big (see Note 54)
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 3.2.2.
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Warbixin	n.f.III	report, bulletin
war	n.m.I	news
bax	v.r.	go out, leave (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
> bixi		
a>i	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(ii)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Warfaafin	n.f.III	information
war	n.m.I	see above
faaf	v.r.	spread (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Warisgaarsiin	n.f.III	communications
war	n.m.I	see above
is	ref.pr.	itself
gaar	v.r.	reach (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-sii	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.10
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

#### 6.4.3. Simple compound

Iidneh	n.f.III	advertisement (lit. 'tell me')
i	per.pr.	me
u	pr.part.	to (see App. IX, 1.4 and 5.3.)
> ii		
dneh	imp.	say, tell

#### 6.5. Phrase Groups

Baaq wicid		call sign
baaq	n.m.I	summons from afar
wicid	n.f.III	call
wac	v.r.	invite (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
> wici		
a>i	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(ii)
-d	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Boostada cirka		air mail
boosto	n.f.IV	post (see 6.2. above)
o>a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-da	d.a.f.	
cir	n.m.I	sky
-ka	d.a.m.	

Habka idaacadda		broadcasting system
hab	n.m.I	method, plan, system
-ka	d.a.m.	
idaacad	n.f.III	broadcast (see 6.2. above)
-da	d.a.f.	

Hirarka dhaadheer		long waves
hirar	n.m.pl.I	waves (see <u>hir</u> , 6.1. above)
-ka	d.a.m.	
dhaadheer	r.adj.pl.	tall, long (see Note 54)

Hirarka dhexe		medium waves
hirarka		see above
dhexe	attr.	middle (see Note 55)

Hirarka gaagaaban		short waves
hirarka		see above
gaagaaban	adj.pl.	short
Saldhigga dayaxgacmeedka		satellite station
saldhig	n.m.II	base (see 2.4.3. above)
-ga	d.a.m.	
dayaxgacmeed	n.m.II	satellite (lit. 'hand-made' moon)
dayax	n.m.II	moon
gacan	n.f.III	hand
n > m	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(viii)
(a)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
-eed	gen.aff.	see App. VIII, 3.(b)
-ka	d.a.m.	
Warisgaarsiinta dayaxgacmeedka		satellite communications
warisgaarsiin	n.f.III	communications (see 6.4.2. above)
-ta	d.a.f.	
dayaxgacmeedka		see above

## 7. EDUCATION

### 7.1. Semantic Shift

Deeq	n.f.III	grant, scholarship o.m. gift
Dugsi	n.m.II	school o.m. shelter (c.f. <u>iskool</u> , 7.2. below)
Fagaare	n.m.VI	forum o.m. meeting place
Fiiro	n.f.IV	theory o.m. thought, reflection
Jimicsi	n.m.II	physical education o.m. act of stretching (c.f. <u>jimicsi</u> 12.1. and 17.1. below)
Laan	n.f.III	faculty (of university) o.m. branch (of tree) (c.f. <u>laan</u> , 15.1. below)
Tiraab	n.m.II	prose o.m. sound of talking
Tix	n.f.III	poetry o.m. embroidered hem
Xarun	n.f.III	centre o.m. a holy assembly place

### 7.2. Borrowings

Akademiye	<	<u>accademia</u>	(It.)	n.m.VI	academy
Balentooloji				n.m.II	paleontology
Bayooloji				n.m.II	biology (c.f. <u>nololaqoon</u> , 7.4.2. below)
Boorso	<	<u>borsa</u>	(It.)	n.f.IV	grant
Buug				n.m.I	book
Cilmi	<	علم [ilmi]	(Ar.)	n.m.II	learning, science
Dersi	<	درسي [darsi]	(Ar.)	n.m.II	lecture

Falsafad < فلسفة [falsafat] (Ar.)	n.m.II	philosophy
Faṣal < فصل [faṣal] (Ar.)	n.m.II	class
Fisigis	n.m.II	physics (for <u>Physics</u> as a field of discourse, see Section 14 below)
Fisiko < fisica (It.)	n.f.IV	physics
Iskool	n.m.II	school (c.f. <u>dugsi</u> , 7.1. above)
Jaamacad < جامعة [jām'at] (Ar.)	n.f.III	university
Jeologi	n.m.II	geology
Joofiisig	n.m.II	geophysics
Juqraafi	n.m.II	geography (for <u>Geography</u> as a field of discourse, see Section 8 below)
Kimiko < chimica (It.)	n.f.IV	chemistry (for <u>Chemistry</u> as a field of discourse, see Section 3 above)
Kimisteri	n.m.II	chemistry
Kolej	n.m.II	college (c.f. <u>kulliyad</u> below)
Konferens	n.m.II	conference
Kulliyad < كلية [kulliyat] (Ar.)	n.f.II	college (c.f. <u>kolej</u> above)
Macallin < معلم [ma'allim] (Ar.)	n.m.V	teacher
Maktabad < مكتبة [maktabat] (Ar.)	n.f.III	library
Manhaj < منهج [manhaj] (Ar.)	n.m.II	curriculum
Matxaf < متحف [mathaf] (Ar.)	n.m.II	museum (c.f. <u>guriga hiddaha</u> , 7.5. below)
Naxwe < نحو [nahū] (Ar.)	n.m.VI	grammar (see also Language, Section 9 below)

Saynis	n.m.II	science
Siminaar	n.m.II	seminar
Taariikh < تاريخ [tārīkh] (Ar.)	n.f.III	history
Xisaab < حساب [ḥisāb] (Ar.)	n.f.III	mathematics (c.f. <u>xisaab</u> , 5.2. above; for <u>Mathematics</u> as a field of discourse, see Section 11 below)

### 7.3. Derivation

#### 7.3.1. Simple derivation

Baaris	n.f.III	research
baar	v.r.	seek, investigate (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-s	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Barbaarin	n.f.III	youth training
barbaar	n.m.II	young unmarried man
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.3.
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

### 7.4. Compounds

#### 7.4.1. Compounds involving derivation

Aqoonisweydaarsi	n.m.II	symposium (c.f. <u>kulan cilmi</u> and <u>shir cilmi</u> , 5.5. below)
aqoon	n.f.III	knowledge
is	ref.pr.	itself
weydaar	v.r.	pass (see App. IV, 1.1.)
si	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Dibufiirin	n.f.III	revision
dib	n.f.III	back (used as adverb)
u	pr.part.	towards (see App. IX, 1.4. and 5.4.)
fiiir	v.r.	be considered (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Diiwaangelin	n.f.III	registration
diiwaan	n.m.II	register, ledger
gal	v.r.	enter (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
> geli		
a > e	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(ii)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Farbarasho	n.f.IV	literacy
far	n.f.III	finger; writing
bar	v.r.	teach (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-o	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.5.(a)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-sho	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Qalinjebin	n.f.III	graduation (university)
qalin	n.m.II	pen
jab	v.r.	break (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
> jebi		
a > e	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(ii)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

(The term is adopted from the tradition among students in Koranic schools of breaking their reed pens when they have completed their studies)

Waxbarasho	n.f.IV	education
wax	n.m.I	thing
barasho	n.f.IV	see <u>farbarasho</u> above

#### 7.4.2. Simple compounds

Aqoonyahan	n.m.II	scholar, academic (c.f. <u>aqoonyahan</u> , 20.4.5. below)
aqoon	n.f.III	knowledge
yahan	n.aff.	see App. V, 2
Buugaghaye	n.m.VI	librarian
buugag	n.m.pl.I	books (see <u>buug</u> , 7.2. above)
haye	n.aff.	see App. V, 2.
Cayayaansqoon	n.f.III	entomology
cayayaan	n.m.II	insects
aqoon		knowledge
Dibutababar	n.m.II	retraining
dib	n.f.III	back (used as adverb)
u	part.pr.	towards (see App. IX, 1.4. and 5.4.)
tababar		training
Geedo-aqoon	n.f.III	botany
geedo	n.m.pl.II	plants
aqoon		knowledge
Nololaqoon	n.f.III	biology (c.f. <u>bayooloji</u> , 7.2. above)
nolol	n.f.III	life
aqoon		knowledge

7.5. Phrase Groups

Buugagga dugsiyada		school text books
buugag	n.m.pl.I	books (see <u>buug</u> , 7.2. above)
-ga	d.a.m.	
dugsiyo	n.f.pl.II	schools (see <u>dugsi</u> , 7.1. above)
o>a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
-da	d.a.f.	
Buugagga qorista		exercise books
buugagga		see above
qoris	n.f.III	writing
qor	v.r.	write (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-s	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-ta	d.a.f.	
Dugsiga dhexe		secondary school
dugsi	n.m.II	school (see 7.1. above)
-ga	d.a.m.	
dhexe	attr.	middle (see Note 55)
Dugsiga hoose		junior school
dugsiga		see above
hoose	attr.	below (see Note 55)
Dugsiga sare		high school
dugsiga		see above
sare	attr.	above (see Note 55)

Guddiga fulinta		board of governors
guddi	n.m.II	committee, jury (c.f. <u>guddi</u> , 15.1. below)
-ga	d.a.m.	
fulin	n.f.III	achievement, implementation
ful	v.r.	be achieved (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-ta	d.a.f.	
Guriga hiddaha		museum (c.f. <u>nathaf</u> , 7.2. above)
guri	n.m.II	house
-ga	d.a.m.	
hidde	n.m.VI	culture, tradition
e>a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
-ha	d.a.m.	
Hannaanka waxbarashada		educational system
hannaan	n.m.II	form, method
-ka	d.a.m.	
waxbarasho	n.f.IV	education (see 7.4.1. above)
o>a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
-da	d.a.f.	
Kolejka sancobarashada		technical college
kolej	n.m.II	college (see 7.2. above)
-ka	d.a.m.	
sancobarasho	n.f.IV	technical education
sanco	n.f.IV	industry (see 5.1. above)
barasho	n.f.IV	see <u>farbarasho</u> , 7.4.1. above
o>a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
-da	d.a.f.	

Kulan cilmi		symposium (c.f. <u>agoonisweydaarsi</u> , 7.4.1. above and <u>shir cilmi</u> below)
kulan	n.m.II	meeting
cilmi	n.m.II	learning, science (see 7.2. above)
Kulliyada waxbarashada		college of education
kulliyad	n.f.III	college (see 7.2. above)
-da	d.a.f.	
waxbarasho	n.f.IV	education (see 7.4.1. above)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-da	d.a.f.	
Sannadka waxbarashada		academic year
sannad	n.m.II	year
-ka	d.a.m.	
waxbarashada		see above
Shir cilmi		symposium (c.f. <u>agoonisweydaarsi</u> , 7.4.1. above and <u>kulan cilmi</u> above)
shir	n.m.I	meeting
cilmi	n.m.II	learning, science (see 7.2. above)
Tababar dhaqso ah		crash course
tababar	n.m.II	training
dhaqso	n.m.II	speed, quickness
ah	rel.cls.	which is (see App. VI, 3)

Tababar ka macallimiinta		teacher training
tababar	n.m.II	see above
-ka	d.a.m.	
macallimiin	n.f.coll.V	teachers (see <u>macallin</u> , 7.2. above)
-ta	d.a.f.	
Taciiinta sare		higher education
taciiin	n.f.III	education
-ta	d.a.f.	
sare	attr.	above (see Note 55)
Waxbarashada khasabka		compulsory education
waxbarasho	n.f.IV	education (see 7.4.1. above)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-da	d.a.f.	
khasab	n.m.II	obligation
-ka	d.a.m.	
Xarunta waxbarashada dadka waaweyn		Adult Education Centre
xarun	n.f.III	centre (see 7.1. above)
waxbarashada		see above
dad	n.m.I	people
-ka	d.a.m.	
waaweyn	r.adj.pl.	large (see Note 54)



## 8. GEOGRAPHY

### 8.1. Semantic Shift

Cidhif	n.m.II	pole o.m. limit, edge
Lakab	n.m.II	stratum o.m. layer, coat (paint, etc.)

### 8.2. Borrowings

Digri	n.m.II	degree
Galob	n.m.II	globe, world
Jasiirad < جزيرة [jazīrat] (Ar.)	n.f.III	island
Juqraafi	n.m.II	geography
Kaarto < <u>carta</u> (It.)	n.f.IV	map (c.f. <u>maab</u> below)
Kaartogaraafiyo < <u>cartografia</u> (It.)	n.f.IV	cartography
Kanaal	n.m.II	canal
Maab	n.m.II	map (c.f. <u>carta</u> above)

### 8.3. Compounds

#### 8.3.1. Compounds involving derivation

Biyogabsi	n.m.II	catchment area
biyo	n.m.pl.III	water
qab	v.r.	hold, seize (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-si	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Cirmeerid	n.f.III	orbit
cir	n.m.I	sky
meer	v.r.	wander, roam (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-id	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Dayaxmadoobaad	n.m.II	lunar eclipse
dayax	n.m.II	moon
madow	r.adj.	black (see Note 54)
ow > oob	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(xiii)
-aad	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Iskuwareegai	n.m.II	revolution (c.f. <u>iarog</u> , 8.3.2. below)
is	ref.pr.	itself
ku	pr.part.	on (see App. IX, 1.2. and 3.3.)
wareeg	v.r.	turn (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-si	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Qorraxkusidkane	n.m.VI	planet
qorrax	n.f.III	sun
ku	pr.part.	to (see App. IX, 1.2. and 3.4.)
aidkan	s.adj.	acting as foster mother (used of camels) (see Note 53)
sidig	n.f.III	system of fostering used in camel breeding (It is a three-way relationship which arises from the slaughtering of baby male camels in order to obtain more milk for humans. The mother camel whose baby is slaughtered is induced to accept as her foster-calf the baby of another she-camel, so that they feed it jointly. By this arrangement, both she-camels have a surplus of milk).

(cont.)

-an		see App. IV, 2.1.1.
>sidkan		
(i)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
g > k	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(vi)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Qorraxmadoobaad	n.m.II	solar eclipse
qorrax	n.f.III	see above
madoobaad	n.m.II	see <u>dayaxmadoobaad</u> above

#### 8.3.2. Simple compounds

Badweyn	n.f.III	ocean
bad	n.f.III	sea
weyn	r.adj.	big (see Note 54)
Biyoshub	n.m.II	watershed
biyo	n.m.pl.III	water
shub	v.aff.	pour (see App. V, 3)
Ciraqoon	n.f.III	meteorology (c.f. <u>hawo-aqoon</u> below)
cir	n.m.I	sky
aqoon		knowledge
Cirkasawir	n.m.II	aerial photograph
cir		see above
ka	pr.part.	from (see App. IX, 1.2. and 2.1.)
sawir		photograph (c.f. صورة [sawirat] (Ar.))

dhulbare	n.m.II	equator
dhul	n.m.I	land, earth
bar	n.m.I	half
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Dhulgariir	n.m.II	earthquake
dhul	n.m.I	see above
gariir		trembling
Hawo-aqoon	n.f.III	meteorology (c.f. <u>ciraqoon</u> above)
hawo	n.f.IV	air
aqoon		knowledge
Isrog	n.m.II	revolution (of planets) (see <u>iskuwareegei</u> , 8.3.1. above)
is	ref.pr.	itself
rog	v.aff.	turn (see App. V, 3)
Laxaadroob	n.m.II	rainfall intensity
laxaad	n.m.II	strength, force
roob	n.m.I	rain

#### 8.4. Phrase Groups

Bah cadeedeed		solar system
bah	n.f.III	descendants
cadeed	n.f.III	rays of the sun
-eed	gen.aff.	see App. VIII, 3(b)

Dhagax ciideed		sandstone
dhagax	n.m.II	stone
ciid	n.f.III	soil, sand
-eed	gen.aff.	see App. VIII, 3(b)
Dhagax dab		igneous rock
dhagax	n.m.II	see above
dab	n.m.I	fire
Dhagax nuuradeed		lime stone
dhagax	n.m.II	see above
nuurad	n.f.III	lime; whitewash
-eed	gen.aff.	see App. VIII, 3(b)
Sahanka dhulgariirka		seismic survey
sahan	n.m.II	survey (see 5.1. above)
-ka	d.a.m.	
dhulgariir	n.m.II	earthquake (see 8.3.2. above)
-ka	d.a.m.	
Xagal farraar		depression
xagal	n.f.III	hollow behind knee
faraar	n.m.II	angle
Xarriiqaha dhigaha		lines of longitude
xarriiqo	n.m.pl.III	lines
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-ha	d.a.m.	
dhigo	n.f.pl.III	vertical sticks forming part of a round roof-frame (traditional manner of constructing nomadic hut)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-ha	d.a.m.	

Xarriiqaha galoobka		lines of latitude and longitude
xarriiqaha		see above
galoob	n.m.II	globe, earth (see 8.2. above)
-ka	d.a.m.	
Xarriiqaha loolka		lines of latitude
xarriiqaha		see above
lool	n.m.I	bundle of sticks tied together and placed horizontally on a round roof-frame ( <u>dhigo</u> - see above) as support for thatch mats (traditional manner of constructing nomadic hut)
-ka	d.a.m.	

## 9. LANGUAGE

### 9.1. Semantic Shift

Amar	n.m.II	imperative o.m. order, instruction (c.f. <u>farriinley</u> , 9.3.2. below)
Astaan	n.f.III	punctuation mark o.m. mark, sign (c.f. <u>astaan</u> , 4.1. above and 12.1. below)
Dhawaag	n.m.II	pronunciation o.m. shouting
Dhibic	n.f.III	full-stop o.m. spot, speck, drip (c.f. <u>joogsi</u> below; c.f. also <u>dhibic</u> , 17.1. below)
Fal	n.m.I	verb o.m. action
Gadaal	n.f.III	ending, termination o.m. addition
Hab	n.m.I	mood o.m. system, method
Hadal	n.m.II	sentence; speech o.m. word
Hakad	n.m.II	comma o.m. pause
Jamac	n.m.II	plural o.m. group, crowd
Joogsi	n.m.II	full-stop o.m. halt (c.f. <u>dhibic</u> above)
Keli	n.m.II	singular o.m. state of being the only one
Kolmo	n.m.pl.III	inverted commas o.m. the lappets of flesh which hang down on either side of a goat's throat
Koox	n.f.III	plural o.m. group
Magac	n.m.II	noun o.m. name

Qaanso	n.f.IV	bracket o.m. bow (weapon)
Qodob	n.m.II	paragraph o.m. article
Sal	n.m.I	root o.m. bottom (c.f. <u>sal</u> , 11.1. below)
Waqti	n.m.II	tense o.m. time
Xubin	n.f.III	syllable o.m. limb (c.f. <u>xubin</u> , 15.1. and 17.1. below)

### 9.2. Borrowings

Fonoolojiye < <u>fonologia</u> (It.)	n.m.VI	phonology
Luqad < <u>لغة</u> [lughat] (Ar.)	n.f.III	language (c.f. <u>af</u> in <u>afyaqaan</u> , 9.4.4. below)
Naxwe < <u>نحو</u> [nahū] (Ar.)	n.m.II	grammar
Ortografiyo < <u>ortografia</u> (It.)	n.f.IV	orthography
Xaraf < <u>حرف</u> [ḥarf] (Ar.)	n.m.V	letter
Xuruuf < <u>حروف</u> [ḥurūf] (Ar.)	n.f.pl.V	alphabet (lit. 'letters')

### 9.3. Derivation

#### 9.3.1. Derivation involving semantic shift

Astaamayn	n.f.III	punctuation
astaan	n.f.III	punctuation mark (see 9.1. above)
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.2.
n > m	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(viii)
-ayn	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Fale	n.m.VI	subject (c.f. <u>yeels</u> , 9.3.2. below)
fai	v.r.	do, act (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Magacuyaal	n.m.II	pronoun
magac	n.m.II	noun (see 9.1. above)
u	pr.part.	for (see App. IX, 1.4. and 5.1.)
yaal	rel.cls.	which is (see App. VI, 2)

### 9.3.2. Simple derivation

Codayn	n.f.III	phonetics
cod	n.m.I	voice
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.2.
-ayn	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Codrogid	n.f.III	phoneme
cod	n.m.I	see above
rog	v.r.	turn (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-id	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Dhaddigayn	n.f.III	feminisation (a feature of the Somali noun - see App.III)
dhaddig	n.m.II	female
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.2
-ayn	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Diiddoley	n.f.III	negative
diido	n.f.IV	refusal
-ley	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Farrinley	n.f.III	imperative (c.f. <u>amar</u> , 9.1. above)
farrin	n.f.III	message, instruction
-ley	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Koobid	n.f.III	abbreviation
koob	v.r.	be short (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-id	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Labayn	n.f.III	masculinisation (a feature of the Somali noun - see App. III)
lab	n.m.I	male
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.2.
-ayn	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Meeleeye	n.m.VI	preposition
meel	n.f.III	place
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.2.
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Shardiley	n.f.III	conditional, subjunctive
shardi	n.m.II	stipulation, condition
-ley	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Sugidley	n.f.III	indicative
sug	v.r.	be exact (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-d	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-ley	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Tilmaame	n.m.VI	adjective
tilmaan	n.f.III	remark
n > m	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(viii)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Weyddiinley	n.f.III	interrogative
weyddiin	v.r.	question, ask (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-ley	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Xiriiriye	n.m.II	conjunction
xiriir	n.m.II	relationship
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.3.
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Yeele	n.m.VI	subject (c.f. <u>fale</u> , 9.3.1. above)
yeel	v.r.	do (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

#### 9.4. Compounds

##### 9.4.1. Compound involving semantic shift

Falkaab	n.m.II	adverb
fal	n.m.I	verb (see 9.1. above)
kaab	v.aff.	support (see App. V, 3)

##### 9.4.2. Compounds involving derivation

Eraybixin	n.f.III	activity of creating new words
eray	n.m.II	word
bax	v.r.	go out, leave (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
> bixi		
a > i	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(ii)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Horjooge	n.m.VI	preposition
hor	n.f.III	front
joog	v.r.	be (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Kudhufasho	n.f.IV	stress
ku	pr.part.	on (see App. IX, 1.2. and 3.3.)
dhuf	v.r.	strike, hit (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-o	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.5.(a)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
-sho	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Layeele	n.m.VI	object (c.f. <u>lafale</u> , 9.4.3. below)
la	pr.part.	with (see App. IX, 1.3. and 4.2.)
yeele		subject (see 9.3.2. above)

##### 9.4.3. Compound involving semantic shift and derivation

Gadaalraace	n.m.VI	ending, termination
gadaal	n.m.II	ending (see 9.1. above)
raac	v.r.	accompany (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Lafale	n.m.VI	object (c.f. <u>layeele</u> , 9.4.2. above)
la	pr.part.	with (see App. IX, 1.3. and 4.2.)
fale		subject (see 9.3.1. above)

9.4.4. Simple compounds

Afyaqaan	n.m.II	linguist
af	n.m.I	language (c.f. <u>luqad</u> , 9.2. above)
yaqaan	n.aff.	see App. V, 2
Isbarbardhig	n.m.II	use of parenthesis
is	ref.pr.	itself
barbar	n.m.II	side
dhig	v.aff.	place (see App. V, 3)

9.5. Phrase Groups

Astaan weyddiin		question mark
astaan	n.f.III	punctuation mark (see 9.1. above)
weyddiin	n.f.III	question
Astaan yaab		exclamation mark
astaan	n.f.III	see above
yaab	n.m.I	surprise
Baarista afafka		philology; linguistic research
baaris	n.f.III	investigation, research (see 7.3.1. above)
-ta	d.a.f.	
afaf	n.m.pl.I	languages
-ka	d.a.m.	
Dhibic hakad		semi-colon
dhibic	n.f.III	full stop (see 9.1. above)
hakad	n.m.II	comma (see 9.1. above)

Diiddoleyda farriinleyda		negative imperative
diiddoley	n.f.III	negative (see 9.3.2. above)
-da	d.a.f.	
farriinley	n.f.III	imperative (see 9.3.2. above)
-da	d.a.f.	
Hadalka tooska		direct speech
hadal	n.m.II	word; sentence (see 9.1. above)
-ka	d.a.m.	
toos	n.m.I	straightness
-ka	d.a.m.	
Jidadka naxwaha		rules of grammar
jidad	n.m.pl.I	roads
-ka	d.a.m.	
naxwe	n.m.II	grammar (see 9.2. above)
e > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
-ha	d.a.m.	
Laba dhibcood		colon
laba	n.f.III	two
dhibic	n.f.III	full stop (see 9.1. above)
(i)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
-ood	gen.aff.	see App. VIII, 3.(c)
Laba kolmood		double inverted commas
laba	n.f.III	see above
kolon	n.f.III	inverted comma (see <u>kolmo</u> , 9.1. above)
(o)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
n > m	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(viii)
-ood	gen.aff.	see App. VIII, 3.(c)

Magac dhaddig		feminine noun
magac	n.m.II	noun (see 9.1. above)
dhaddig	n.m.II	female
Magac gaar		proper noun
magac	n.m.II	see above
gaar	n.m.I	that which is particular, special
Magac guud		common noun
magac	n.m.II	see above
guud	adj.	general
Magac kadin ah		collective noun
magac	n.m.II	see above
kadin	n.m.II	herd (of camels)
ah	rel.cls.	which is (see App. VI, 3)
Magac lab		masculine noun
magac	n.m.II	see above
lab	n.m.I	male
Magac qarsoon		abstract noun
magac	n.m.II	see above
qarsoon	v.adj.	hidden (see Note 52)
qar	v.r.	be hidden (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-soon	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.12
Magacuyaal dad		personal pronoun
magacuyaal	n.m.II	pronoun (see 9.3.1. above)
dad	n.m.I	people

Magacuyaal noqod		reflexive pronoun
magacuyaal	n.m.II	see above
noqod	n.m.II	return
noqo	v.r.	see App. IV, 1.2.5.(e)
-d	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Magacuyaal su'aaleed		interrogative pronoun
magacuyaal	n.m.II	see above
su'aal	n.f.III	question
-eed	gen.aff.	see App. VIII, 3(b)



# 10. LAW

## 10.1. Semantic Shift

Go'aan	n.m.III	sentence o.m. decision (c.f. <u>xukun</u> , 10.2. below)
Tijaabo	n.f.IV	probation o.m. test
Katooyo	n.f.IV	embezzlement o.m. theft

## 10.2. Borrowings

Boolis	n.m.II	police
Jeel	n.m.II	prison
Kontarabaan	n.m.II	contraband
Maxkamad < محكمة [mahkamat] (Ar.)	n.f.III	court
Rafcaan < رفع [rafa'] (Ar.)	n.m.II	appeal
Sharci < شريعة [shari'at] (Ar.)	n.m.II	law
Xaq < حق [haq] (Ar.)	n.m.V	justice, right
Xukun < حكم [hukum] (Ar.)	n.m.II	sentence (c.f. <u>go'aan</u> , 10.1. above)
Xuquuq < حقوق [huquq] (Ar.)	n.f.pl.V	legal rights (plural of <u>xaq</u> above)

## 10.3. Derivation

Caddayn	n.f.III	statement (c.f. <u>caddayn</u> , 5.3.3. above)
cad	r.adj.	white, clear (see Note 54)
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 3.2.2.
> caddee		
-ayn	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

## 10.4. Compounds

### 10.4.1. Compound involving borrowing

Sharci darro	n.f.IV	breach of law, contravention
sharci	n.m.II	law (see 10.2. above)
-darro	n.aff.	see App. V, 2

### 10.4.2. Compounds involving derivation

Dhaqancelin	n.f.III	rehabitation
dhaqan	n.m.II	tradition, culture
celin		return
cel'		be returned (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Garsoore	n.m.VI	judge
gar	n.f.III	law-suit
soor	v.r.	distribute (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

### 10.4.3. Compounds involving borrowings and derivation

Sharci dejin	n.f.III	legislation
sharci	n.m.II	law (see 10.2. above)
deg	v.r.	descend (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
> deji		
g > j	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(v)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Xaquisinnaan	n.f.III	equality of rights
xaq	n.m.V	justice (see 10.2. above)
u	pr.part.	for (see App. IX, 1.4. and 5.1.)
sin	v.r.	be level (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-an	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.2.
(a)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
m > n		m and n cannot stand together so the m is coloured by the following n
> sinn		
-aan	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

#### 10.4.4. Simple compounds

Garsoor	n.m.II	justice
gar	n.f.III	law
soor	v.aff.	distribute (see App. V, 3)
Garyaqaan	n.m.II	lawyer
gar	n.f.III	see above
yaqaan	n.aff.	see App. V, 2
Xeergef	n.m.II	penal code
xeer	n.m.I	traditional law
gef	v.aff.	err, transgress (see App. V, 3)

Xeeryaqaan	n.m.II	lawyer
xeer	n.m.I	see above
yaqaan	n.aff.	see App. V, 2

#### 10.5. Phrase Groups

Baabi'inta xukunka		quashed sentence
baabi'in	n.f.III	erasure, destruction
baabi'	v.r.	erase (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-ta	d.a.f.	
xukum	n.m.II	sentence (see 10.2. above)
-ka	d.a.m.	
Baaridda dembiga		criminal investigation
baarid	n.f.III	search, investigation
baar	v.r.	seek (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-d	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-da	d.a.f.	
deabi	n.m.II	crime
-ga	d.a.m.	
Joojinta fulinta		stay of execution
joojin	n.f.III	cessation
joog	v.r.	be, remain (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
> jooji		
g > j	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(v)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-ta	d.a.f.	

(cont.)

(cont.)

fulin	n.f.III	implementation
ful	v.r.	be achieved (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-n	dar.aff.	see App. V, 1
-ta	d.a.f.	
Kahortagga dembiga		crime prevention
kahortag	n.m.II	opposition, prevention
ka	pr.part.	from (see App. IX, 1.1. and 2.1.)
hor	n.f.III	front
tag	v.aff.	go (see App. V, 3)
-ga	d.a.m.	
dembi	n.m.II	crime
-ga	d.a.m.	
Maxkamadda degmada		district court
maxkamad	n.f.III	court (see 10.2. above)
-da	d.a.f.	
degmo	n.f.IV	district (c.f. <u>degmo</u> , 15.1. below)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-da	d.a.f.	
Maxkamadda dhexe		central court
maxkamad	n.f.III	see above
-da	d.a.f.	
dhexe	attr.	middle (see Note 55)
Maxkamadda rafcaanka		appeal court
maxkamadda	n.f.III	see above
rafcaan	n.m.II	appeal (see 10.2. above)
-ka	d.a.m.	

Maxkamadda sare		supreme court
maxkamadda	n.f.III	see above
sare	attr.	above (see Note 55)
Saldhigga booliska		police station
saldhig	n.m.II	base (see 2.4.3. above)
-ga	d.a.m.	
boolis	n.m.II	police (see 10.2. above)
-ka	d.a.m.	

11. MATHEMATICS11.1. Semantic Shift

Aragti	n.f.III	theorem o.m. thought, reflection
Barbarro	n.f.pl.II	parallel lines o.m. sides
Chidib	n.m.II	axis o.m. stick fixed in the ground to act as a prop or support
Duleed	n.m.II	complement o.m. back, end
Eter	n.m.II	zero o.m. emptiness
Fansaar	n.m.II	function o.m. act of placing a second rider on an animal behind the first whereby the movements of the second are dependent upon the first.
Gacan	n.f.III	radius o.m. hand
Hormo	n.f.IV	sub-set o.m. first group of camels extracted from the herd to be watered.
Isir	n.m.II	factor o.m. ancestry, genealogy (c.f. <u>kadhexseya</u> , 11.4.3. below; c.f. also <u>isir</u> , 12.1. below)
Jab	n.m.I	fraction o.m. fragment, sliver (c.f. <u>farasyon</u> , 11.2. below)
Kulan	n.m.II	rectangular co-ordinate o.m. meeting
Qoqob	n.m.II	diameter o.m. partition, boundary fence (c.f. <u>dhexroor</u> , 11.4.5. below)
Sal	n.m.I	base o.m. bottom (c.f. <u>sal</u> , 9.1. above)

Sallax	n.m.II	plane o.m. smooth flat surface of stone
Urur	n.m.II	set o.m. group, gathering (c.f. <u>urur</u> 2.1. above and 15.1. and 20.1. below)
Waax	n.f.III	quadrant o.m. quarter (a share in the division of a cut of meat)
Wareeg	n.m.II	circumference o.m. enclosure
Xagal	n.f.III	angle o.m. hollow at back of knee; hollow between upper and lower arm
Xidid	n.m.II	root o.m. root of plant (c.f. <u>xidid</u> , 12.1. below)
Xuddun	n.f.III	centre o.m. navel

11.2. Borrowings

Farasyon	< <u>frazione</u> (It.)	n.m.II	Fraction (c.f. <u>jub</u> 11.1. above)
Garaaf		n.m.II	graph
Istaatistiko	< <u>statistica</u> (It.)	n.f.IV	statistics
Jomitir		n.m.II	geometry
Khaanad	< <u>khānat</u> (Ar.)	n.f.III	mathematical table (c.f. <u>tuse</u> , 11.3.1. below)
Killo		n.f.IV	kilo(gramme)
Killomitir		n.m.II	kilometre
Lambar		n.m.II	number (c.f. <u>tiro</u> in <u>tiro buuxda</u> , 11.5. below)
Logardam		n.m.II	logarithm
Mayl		n.m.I	mile
Miilimitir		n.m.II	millimetre
Ordinayt		n.m.II	ordinate

Sentimilitre	n.m.II	centimetre
Taanjenti < <u>tangente</u> (It.)	n.m.II	tangent
Tirignoometeri	n.m.II	trigonometry
Xisaab < حساب [hisab] (Ar.)	n.f.III	mathematics; sum (c.f. <u>xisaab</u> , 2.2. and 7.2. above)

11.3. Derivation11.3.1. Simple derivation

Doorsome	n.m.VI	variable
door	v.r.	change (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-soon	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.12
n > m	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4. (viii)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Furfurid	n.f.III	solution
furfur	rtv.v.r.	keep on opening (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-id	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Hooseeye	n.m.VI	denominator
hocs	n.f.III	bottom
-ee	v.ext.	see App. V, 2.1.2.
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Meeris	n.m.II	circumference
meer	v.r.	wander, roam (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-s	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Qaybiye	n.m.VI	divisor (c.f. <u>qaybiye</u> , 19.3.1. below)
qayb	n.f.III	part
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.3.
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Sarreeye	n.m.VI	numerator (c.f. <u>sarreeye</u> , 2.3.3. above)
sare	attr.	above (see Note 55)
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 4.1.1.
bsarree		
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Tuse	n.m.VI	mathematical table (c.f. <u>khanaad</u> , 11.2. above)
tus	v.r.	show, display (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

11.4. Compounds11.4.1. Compound involving semantic shift

Saddexagal	n.f.III	triangle
saddex	n.f.III	three
zagal		angle (see 11.1. above)

11.4.2. Compound involving borrowing

Xisaabfal	n.m.II	mathematical calculation
xisaab	n.f.III	mathematics (see 11.2. above)
fal	v.aff.	do (see App. V, 3)

11.4.3. Compounds involving derivation

afargeeale	n.m.VI	rectangle
afar	n.f.III	four
gees	n.f.III	corner, side
-la	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Iskudhufasho	n.f.IV	multiplication
is	ref.pr.	itself
ku	pr.part.	on (see App. IX, 1.2. and 3.3.)
dhuf	v.r.	strike (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-o	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.5.(a)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
-aho	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Isle'eg	n.f.III	equation
is	ref.pr.	see above
le'eg	adj.	equal
Isle'ekaan	n.f.III	symmetry
is	ref.pr.	see above
le'eg	adj.	equal
g > k	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(vi)
-aan	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Isugayn	n.f.III	addition
is	ref.pr.	see above
u	pr.part.	for (see App. IX, 1.4. and 5.1.)
gee	v.r.	bring together (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. V, 1.2.3.(b)
i > y		
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Isugaybin	n.f.III	division
is	ref.pr.	see above
u	pr.part.	see above
gayb	n.f.III	part
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.3.
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Iswaydaarin	n.f.III	conversion
is	ref.pr.	see above
waydaar	v.r.	pass (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Kadhaxeeye	n.m.VI	factor (c.f. <u>isir</u> , 11.1. above)
ka	pr.part.	from (see App. IX, 1.1. and 2.1.)
dhaxe	attr.	middle (see Note 55)
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 4.1.1.
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Kalagoyu	n.f.III	subtraction
kala	adv.	apart
goo	v.r.	cut (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
i > y		
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Kudhufte	n.m.VI	multiplier
ku	pr.part.	on (see App. IX, 1.2. and 3.3.)
dhuf	v.r.	strike, hit (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-o	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.5.(a)
(o)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1v)
-te	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

11.4.4. Compound involving semantic shift and derivation

Kaglogocoye	n.m.VI	diagonal
kaglo	n.m.pl.III	angles (see <u>kagal</u> , 11.1. above)
goc	v.r.	crt (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

11.4.5. Simple compounds

Dhexroor	n.m.II	diameter (c.f. <u>qogob</u> , 11.1. above)
dhex	n.f.III	centre, middle
roor	v.aff.	run (see App. V, 3)
Isuqiyaas	n.f.III	proportion
is	ref.pr.	itself
u	pr.part.	for (see App. IX, 1.4. and 5.1.)
qiyaas		measuring, assessing
Kalamid	n.f.III	variant
kala	adv.	apart
mid		one
Saamigal	n.m.II	proportion
saami	n.m.II	share (particularly of spoils of war)
gal	v.aff.	see App. V, 3

11.5. Phrase Groups

Bar tobanle		decimal point
bar	n.f.III	spot, speck
tobanle	n.m.VI	decimal
toban	n.m.II	ten
-le	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Jab tobanle		decimal fraction
jab	n.m.I	decimal (see 11.1. above)
tobanle	n.m.VI	see above
Leabar dhan		whole number
lambar	n.m.II	number (see 11.2. above)
dhan	adj.	complete
Qaab sugan		formula
qaab	n.m.I	shape
sugan	v.adj.	exact, precise (see Note 52)
sug	v.r.	be exact (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-an	v.ext.	see App. V, 1.2.2. (a)
Tiro buuxda		even number
tiro	n.f.IV	number (c.f. <u>lambar</u> , 11.2. above)
buuxda	rel.cls.	which is full (see App. VI, 2)
buux	v.r.	fill (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-da	v.tex.	third person singular, present general tense
Tiro dhiman		odd number
tiro	n.f.IV	see above
dhiman	v.adj.	reduced, deficient (see Note 52)
dhin	v.r.	reduce (see App. IV, 1.1.)
n > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4. (viii)
-an	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.2. (a)
Tiro idil		whole number
tiro	n.f.IV	see above
idil	adj.	all

## 12. MEDICINE

### 12.1. Semantic Shift

Astaan	n.f.III	symptom o.m. mark, sign (c.f. <u>astaan</u> , 4.1. and 9.1. above)
Galaamad	n.f.III	symptom o.m. mark
Dhacaan	n.m.II	serum o.m. sap
Dheef	n.f.III	vitamin o.m. something beneficial (c.f. <u>fiitamiin</u> , 12.2. below; c.f. also <u>dheef</u> , 3.1. above)
Dufan	n.m.II	body fats o.m. grease
Dux	n.f.III	body fats o.m. fat from meat, grease
Hufnaan	n.f.III	hygiene o.m. cleanliness
Irbad	n.f.III	syringe o.m. needle (c.f. <u>toobin</u> below)
Isir	n.m.II	genetics o.m. ancestry, genealogy (c.f. <u>dirtiris</u> , 12.4.3. below; c.f. also <u>isir</u> , 11.1. above)
Jimicsi	n.m.II	physiotherapy o.m. act of stretching (c.f. <u>jimicsi</u> , 7.1. above and 17.1. below)
Xiriir	n.m.II	corpuscle o.m. grain of seed, pip
Mindiil	n.f.III	scalpel o.m. razor
Nafaqo	n.f.IV	nutrient o.m. maintenance, support
Qalliin	n.f.III	surgery, operation o.m. act of carving
Sun	n.f.III	toxin o.m. poison

Toobin	n.m.II	syringe o.m. cupping horn (c.f. <u>irbad</u> above)
Xidid	n.m.II	vein o.m. root (of tree) (c.f. <u>xidid</u> , 11.1. above)
12.2. Borrowings		
Ambalas	n.m.II	ambulance (c.f. <u>bukaanaqaad</u> , 12.4.5. below)
Ameebo	n.f.IV	amoeba
Antibiyootig	n.m.II	antibiotic
Ayadiin	n.m.II	iodine
Bagteeriyo	n.f.IV	bacteria
Balaasmo	n.f.IV	plasma
Baroomiin	n.m.II	bromine
Borotiin	n.m.II	protein
Daawo < دَاوَو [dawa'] (Ar.)	n.f.IV	drug, medicine
Dhahktar	n.m.II	doctor
Farmashiye < <u>farmacia</u> (It.)	n.m.IV	chemist's, pharmacy
Fayruus	n.m.II	virus
Ferijiteer	n.m.II	refrigerator (c.f. <u>qaboojiye</u> , 12.3.1. below)
Fiitamiin	n.m.II	vitamin (c.f. <u>dheef</u> , 12.1. above)
Fisyoolojiye < <u>fisiologia</u> (It.)	n.m.VI	physiology
Isbitaal	n.m.II	hospital
Jeermi < <u>germe</u> (It.)	n.m.II	germ
Kaankaro < <u>canoro</u> (It.)	n.f.IV	cancer
Kaarbohaydareyt	n.m.II	carbohydrate
Kabsool	n.m.II	capsule
Kaloori	n.m.II	calorie



Karantiin	n.m.II	quarantine
Khamir < خمر [khamir] (Ar.)	n.m.II	enzyme
Mikroskoob	n.m.II	microscope (c.f. <u>wayneeye</u> , 12.3.1. below)
Mikroob	n.m.II	microbe
Shoog	n.m.I	shock

### 12.3. Derivation

#### 12.3.1. Simple derivation

Dhagaystaa	n.m.II	stethoscope
dhag	n.f.III	ear
-ayso	v.art.	see App. IV, 2.2.3.
(o)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
-taa	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Mudnaan	n.f.III	injection
miid	v.r.	poke, prick (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-an	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.2.(a)
(a)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
-aan	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Qaboojiye	n.m.VI	refrigerator (c.f. <u>ferijiteer</u> , 12.2. above)
qabow	v.r.	be cold (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
> qabooji		
ow > ooj	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(v)
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Suuxin	n.f.III	anaesthetic
suux	v.r.	faint, lose consciousness (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. V, 1.2.3 (b)
-a	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Suuxiye	n.m.VI	anaesthetist
suuxi	v.r. + ext.	see above
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Wayneeye	n.m.VI	microscope (c.f. <u>mikroskoob</u> , 12.2. above)
weyn	r.adj.	big (see Note 54)
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 3.2.2.
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

### 12.4. Compounds

#### 12.4.1. Compounds involving semantic shift

Nafaqodarro	n.f.IV	malnutrition
nafaqo	n.f.IV	nutrient (see 12.1. above)
darro	n.aff.	see App. V, 2

#### 12.4.2. Compound involving borrowing

Fiitamiindarro	n.f.IV	vitamin deficiency
fiitamiin	n.m.II	vitamin (see 12.2. above)
-darro	n.aff.	see App. V, 2
Jeermireeb	n.m.II	antiseptic
jeermi	n.m.II	germ (see 12.2. above)
reeb	v.aff.	repulse (see App. V, 3)

12.4.3. Compound involving derivation

Bukaansocod	n.m.II	out-patient
bukaan	n.m.II	ill person
soco	v.r.	go, walk (see App. IV, 1.2.5.(e))
-d	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Dhaldiirir	n.f.III	incubator
dhal	n.m.I	child
dilir	v.r.	be warm (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Dhiigsiln	n.f.III	blood donation
dhiig	n.m.I	blood
sii	v.r.	give (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Dirtiris	n.m.II	genetics (c.f. <u>isir</u> , 12.1. above)
dir	n.m.I	ancestors
tir	v.r.	count (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-s	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Isku-agaasimid	n.f.III	co-ordination (c.f. <u>isuduwid</u> below)
is	ref.pr.	itself
ku	pr.part.	to (see App. IX, 1.2. and 3.4.)
agaasin	n.m.II	tending, managing (c.f. <u>agaasin</u> , 20.1. below)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.3.
> agaasimi		
n > m	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(viii)
-d	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Isqaadsiln	n.f.III	infection
is	ref.pr.	see above
qaad	v.r.	take (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-sii	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.10
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Isuduwid	n.f.III	co-ordination (c.f. <u>iskuagaasimid</u> above)
is	ref.pr.	itself
u	pr.part.	for (see App. IX, 1.4. and 5.1.)
duw	v.r.	move, shift (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-id	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Neefsiln	n.f.III	resuscitation
neaf	n.f.III	breath
sii	v.r.	give (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Tarantirid	n.f.III	sterilisation
taran	n.f.III	act of multiplying or reproducing
tir	v.r.	destroy, erase (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-id	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Wadnedocrin	n.f.III	heart transplant
wadne	n.m.II	heart
door	v.r.	change (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Wasakhtire	n.m.VI	detergent
wasakh	n.f.III	dirt (c.f. <u>وساخ</u> [wasakh] (Ar.))
tir	v.r.	destroy (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

#### 12.4.4. Compounds involving borrowings and derivation

Isbitaalyare	n.m.VI	infirmary
isbitaal	n.m.II	hospital (see 12.2. above)
yar	r.adj.	small (see Note 54)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Jeermi	n.m.VI	disinfectant
jeermi	n.m.II	germ (see 12.2. above)
tir	v.r.	destroy (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

#### 12.4.5. Simple compounds

Bukaanjiif	n.m.II	in-patient
bukaan	n.m.II	ill person
jiif	v.aff.	be lying down (See App. V, 3)
Bukaanqaad	n.m.II	ambulance (c.f. <u>ambalas</u> , 12.2. above)
bukaan	n.m.II	see above
qaad	v.aff.	take (see App. V, 3)
Cuduraheeg	n.m.II	diagnosis
cudur	n.m.II	illness
sheeg	v.aff.	say, tell (see App. V, 3)
Dhiigbax	n.m.II	haemorrhage
dhiig	n.m.I	blood
bax	v.aff.	go out, leave (see App. V, 3)

Dhiigdarro	n.f.IV	anaemia
dhiig	n.m.I	see above
darro	n.aff.	see App. V, 2
Dhiigkac	n.m.II	blood pressure; hypertension
dhiig	n.m.I	see above
kac	v.aff.	rise (see App. V, 3)
Dhiigkushub	n.m.II	transfusion
dhiig	n.m.I	see above
ku	pr.part.	in (see App. IX, 1.2. and 3.2.)
shub	v.aff.	pour (see App. V, 3)
Kahortag	n.m.II	prophylactic
ka	pr.part.	against (see App. IX, 1.2. and 2.1.)
hor	n.f.III	front
tag	v.aff.	go (see App. V, 3)
Ooga-aqoon	n.f.III	anatomy
oogo	n.f.IV	body
aqoon		knowledge
Xubno-aqoon	n.f.III	anatomy
xubno	n.m.pl.III	parts of the body, limbs
aqoon		knowledge

## 12.5. Phrase Groups

Aaladda shaqada maskaxda		electro-encephalograph
aalad	n.f.III	equipment (see <u>aalad</u> 5.2.above)
-da	d.a.f.	
shaqo	n.f.IV	work
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
-da	d.a.f.	
maskax	n.f.III	brain
-da	d.a.f.	
Aaladda shaqada wadnaha		electro-cardiograph
aaladda shaqada		see above
wadne	n.m.II	heart
e > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
-ha	d.a.m.	
Afshareer ogsajiin		oxygen mask
afshareer	n.m.II	mask
af	n.m.I	mouth
shareer	n.m.II	obstruction
ogsajiin	n.m.II	oxygen (see 4.2. above)
Bangiga dhiiga		blood bank
bangi	n.m.II	bank (see 3.2. above)
-ga	d.a.m.	
dhiig	n.m.I	blood
-ga	d.a.m.	

Caafimaadka qofka		personal hygiene
caafimaad	n.m.II	health
-ka	d.a.m.	
qof	n.m.I	person
-ka	d.a.m.	
Cilmiga cudurrada addiimada		orthopaedics
cilmi	n.m.II	science (see <u>cilmi</u> , 7.2. above)
-ga	d.a.m.	
cudurro	n.f.pl.II	illnesses
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
-da	d.a.f.	
addiimo	n.f.pl.II	legs
o > a	ph.alt.	see above
-da	d.a.f.	
Cilmiga cudurrada caruurta		paediatrics
cilmiga		see above
cudurrada		see above
caruur	n.f.III	children
-ta	d.a.f.	
Cilmiga cudurrada haragga		dermatology
cilmiga		see above
cudurrada		see above
harag	n.m.II	skin, hide
-ga	d.a.m.	

Cilmiga cudurrada indhaha		ophthalmology
cilmiga		see above
cudurrada		see above
indhoo	n.m.pl.III	eyes
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-ha	d.a.m.	
Cilmiga dhakhtarnimada		medicine (profession)
cilmiga		see above
dhakhtar	n.m.II	doctor (see 12.2. above)
-nimo	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-da	d.a.f.	
Cilmiga dhalashada		obstetrics
cilmiga		see above
dhalasho	n.f.III	birth
dhal	v.r.	bear, procreate (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-o	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.5.(c)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-sho	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Cudurka ameebada		amoebal disease
cudurka	n.m.II	illness
ameebo	n.f.IV	amoeba (see 12.2. above)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-da	d.a.f.	
Cudurka deriskunoolaanta		parasitic disease
cudurka		see above

(cont.)

deriskunoolaana	n.f.III	parasitical existence
deris	n.m.II	neighbour
ku	pr.part.	on (see App. IX, 1.2. and 3.3.)
nool	adj.	live
-aan	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-ta	d.a.f.	
Daah ogsajiin		oxygen tent
daah	n.m.II	screen, curtain
ogsajiin	n.m.II	oxygen (see 4.2. above)
Durdurka dhiigga		blood-stream
durdur	n.m.II	stream
-ka	d.a.m.	
dhiig	n.m.I	blood
-ga	d.a.m.	
Gargaar degdeg ah		first aid
gargaar	n.m.II	assistance
degdeg	n.m.II	speed, emergency
ah	rel.cls.	which is (see App. VI, 3)
Qolka qalliinta		operating theatre
qol	n.m.I	room
-ka	d.a.m.	
qalliin	n.f.III	operation (see 12.1. above)
-ta	d.a.f.	
Qorshaynta qoyska		family planning
qorshe	n.m.VI	plan
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.2.
-ayn	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-ta	d.a.f.	
qoys	n.m.I	family
-ka	d.a.m.	

Warqadda dhakhtarka		prescription
warqad	n.f.III	letter (see 5.2. above)
-da	d.a.f.	
dhakhtar	n.m.II	doctor (see 12.2. above)
-ka	d.a.m.	

### 13. OFFICE

#### 13.1. Semantic Shift

Asli	n.m.II	original (of letter) o.m. origin
Gal	n.m.I	envelope o.m. scabbard, sheath
Xabag	n.f.III	sealing wax; glue o.m. resin
Xirmo	n.f.IV	file o.m. bundle, sheaf (c.f. <u>fayl</u> , 13.2. below)
Xuub	n.m.I	adhesive tape o.m. sloughed skin of snake; foetal membrane

#### 13.2. Borrowings

Arkiifiyo	<	<u>archivio</u>	(It.)	n.f.IV	archives, files
Armaajo	<	<u>armadio</u>	(It.)	n.f.IV	filing cabinet
Faanijar				n.m.II	furniture
Fayl				n.m.I	file (c.f. <u>xirmo</u> , 13.1. above)
Foom				n.m.I	form
Fotostaat				n.m.II	photostat copy
Isteensal				n.m.II	stencil
Kalaasifikatoore	<	<u>classificatore</u>	(It.)	n.m.VI	file index (c.f. <u>xirmatus</u> , 13.4.1. below)
Nuqul	<	<u>نقل</u> <u>nuqul</u>	(Ar.)	n.m.II	copy
Xafiis				n.m.II	office

### 13.3. Derivation

#### 13.3.1. Simple derivation

Badiye	n.m.VI	duplicating machine
bad	v.r.	be much (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

### 13.4. Compounds

#### 13.4.1. Compound involving semantic shift

Kirmatus	n.m.II	file index (c.f. <u>kalaasifikatoore</u> , 13.2. above)
xirmo	n.f.IV	file (see 13.1. above)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
tus	v.aff.	show (see App. V, 3)

#### 13.4.2. Compounds involving derivation

Dabaylhagaajin	n.f.III	air conditioning
dabayl	n.f.III	wind
hagaag	n.m.II	straightness
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.3.
> hagaaji		
g > j	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(v)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Hawaqaboojiye	n.m.VI	air conditioning
hawo	n.f.IV	air
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
qabow	v.r.	be cold (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
> qabooji		
ow > ooj	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(v)
-y-		junction consonant

Koruqaade	n.m.VI	lift, elevator
kor	n.m.I	top
u	pr.part.	towards (see App. IX, 1.5. and 5.4.)
qaad	v.r.	take (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

#### 13.4.3. Simple compound

Xusuusqor	n.m.II	diary
xusuus	n.f.III	memory
qor	v.aff.	write (see App. V, 3)

#### 13.5. Phrase Groups

Alaab xafiis		office equipment
alaab	n.f.III	goods, moveable property
xafiis	n.m.II	office (see 13.2. above)
Gal xirmo		file cover
gal	n.m.I	envelope (see 13.1. above)
xirmo	n.f.IV	file (see 13.1. above)
Kursi wareega		swivel chair
kursi	n.m.V	chair (c.f. كرسي [kursi] (Ar.))
wareega	rel.cls.	which turns (see App. VI, 2)
wareeg	v.r.	turn (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-a	v.ter.	third person singular, present general tense

Makiinadda farta		typewriter (c.f. <u>makiinadda qoraalka</u> below)
makiinad	n.f.III	machine (see 5.2. above)
-da	d.a.f.	
far	n.f.III	writing
-ta	d.a.f.	
Makiinadda masawirka		photo-copier
makiinadda		see above
masawir	n.m.II	camera (c.f. <u>مصور</u> [muṣawwirat] (Ar.))
-ka	d.a.m.	
Makiinadda qoraalka		typewriter
makiinadda		see above
qoraal	n.m.II	writing
qor	v.r.	write (see App. IV. 1.1.)
-aal	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-ka	d.a.m.	
Makiinadda telekiska		telex machine
makiinadda		see above
telekis	n.m.II	telex (see 6.2. above)
-ka	d.a.m.	

#### 14. PHYSICS

##### 14.1. Semantic Shift

Aamin	n.m.II	time o.m. Western Somali dialect word meaning time, but now superseded in the more general sense by <u>wagti</u> .
Cuf	n.m.I	mass o.m. any material used for stuffing cushions, etc.
Culays	n.m.II	weight o.m. heaviness (c.f. <u>culays</u> , 4.1. above and 17.1. below)
Danab	n.f.III	electricity o.m. thunderbolt (c.f. <u>koronto</u> , 14.2. below)
Dhamaad	n.m.II	terminal o.m. end, completion
Gariir	n.m.II	pulse o.m. trembling
Hawl	n.f.III	work o.m. labour, toil
Hawo	n.f.IV	space o.m. air
Jeegaan	n.f.III	spectrum o.m. rainbow
Jid	n.m.I	trajectory o.m. road, path
Kaynaan	n.m.II	velocity o.m. continuous travel towards a specific destination
Leeb	n.m.I	vector o.m. arrow



Mug	n.m.I	capacity, volume o.m. fullness
Saxar	n.m.II	particle o.m. speck, grit
Socdaal	n.m.II	motion o.m. walking, movement
Tamar	n.f.III	energy o.m. strength
Xawaare	n.m.IV	speed o.m. galloping (of horse)
Xoog	n.m.I	force o.m. strength (c.f. <u>xoog</u> , 2.1. above)

#### 14.2. Borrowings

Aayoon	n.m.II	ion
Birisia	n.m.II	prism
Borotoon	n.m.II	proton
Dinaamiko < <u>dinamica</u> (It.)	n.f.IV	dynamics
Eletrodi	n.m.II	electrode
Fisigis	n.m.II	physics
Fisiko < <u>fisica</u> (It.)	n.f.IV	physics
Pooltej	n.m.II	voltage
Pooltis	n.m.II	volt
Killowaad	n.m.II	kilowatt
Koronto < <u>corrente</u> (It.)	n.f.IV	electricity (c.f. <u>danab</u> , 14.1. above)
Magniit	n.m.II	magnet (c.f. <u>birlab</u> in <u>bad birlabeed</u> , 14.5. below)
Migawaad	n.m.II	megawatt
Niyuutaroon	n.m.II	neutron
Serked	n.m.II	circuit

#### 14.3. Derivation

##### 14.3.1. Derivation involving semantic shift

Tamariye	n.m.VI	generator (c.f. <u>danabdhaliye</u> , 14.4.2. below)
tamar	n.f.III	energy (see 14.1. above)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.3.
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

##### 14.3.2. Derivation involving borrowing

Aayoonayn	n.f.III	ionisation
aayoon	n.m.II	ion (see 14.2. above)
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.2.
-ayn	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Korontoroge	n.m.VI	transformer
koronto	n.f.IV	electricity (see 14.2. above)
rog	v.r.	turn (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

##### 14.3.3. Simple derivation

Adkayste	n.m.VI	resistor
adag	r.adj.	hard (see Note 54)
g > k	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(vi)
(a)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
-ayso	v.r.	see App. IV, 3.3.3.
(o)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
-te	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Wadhfiye	n.m.VI	oscillator
wadhaf	n.m.II	sling, catapult
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.3.
> wadhfi		
(a)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4. (iv)
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

#### 14.4. Compounds

##### 14.4.1. Compounds involving derivation

Biyoeege	n.m.VI	water gauge
biyo	n.m.pl.III	water
beeg	v.r.	measure (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Dhuljiidad	n.m.II	terrestrial gravity
dhul	n.m.I	land, earth
jiid	v.r.	pull (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-o	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.5.(c)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
-d	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Iskuxoqid	n.f.III	friction
is	ref.pr.	itself
ku	pr.part.	on (see App. IX, 1.2. and 3.5.)
xoq	v.r.	scrape (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-id	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Kulgudbiye	n.m.VI	heat conductor
kul	n.m.I	heat
gudub	v.r.	cross (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
>gudbi		
(u)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Saxeeye	n.m.VI	rectifier
sax	adj.	correct
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 3.2.2.
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Sime	n.m.VI	regulator
sia	v.r.	be level (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

##### 14.4.2. Compounds involving derivation and semantic shift

Danabdhaliye	n.m.VI	generator (c.f. <u>tamariye</u> , 14.3.1. above)
danab	n.f.III	electricity (see 14.1. above)
dhal	v.r.	procreate, bear (see App. VI, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

### 14.4.3. Simple compounds

Heerkulbeeg	n.m.II	thermometer
heer	n.m.I	level
kul	n.m.I	heat
beeg	v.aff.	measure (see App. V, 3)
Kaahfal	n.m.II	radio-activity
kaah	n.m.II	ray, shaft (of light)
fal	v.aff.	do, act (see App. V, 3)
Roobqiyaas	n.f.III	rain-gauge
roob	n.m.I	rain
qiyaas		measuring, assessing

### 14.5. Phrase Groups

Bad birlabeed		magnetic field
bad	n.m.I	field
birlab	n.f.III	(c.f. <u>goob</u> in <u>goobta korontada</u> below) magnet
-eed	gen.aff.	(c.f. <u>magnit</u> , 14.2. above) see App. VIII, 3(b)
Caalinka fisikada		physicist
caalin	n.m.II	learned man, scholar
-ka	d.a.a.	
fisiko	n.f.IV	physics (see 14.2. above)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. II, 1.4.(i)
-da	d.a.f.	
Cuf atam		atomic mass
cuf	n.m.I	mass (see 14.1. above)
atam	n.m.II	atom (see 4.2. above)

Curiye kaahfal leh		radio-active element
curiye	n.m.VI	element (see 4.3.1. above)
kaahfal	n.m.II	radio-activity (see 14.4.3. above)
leh	rel.cls.	which has (see App. VI, 3)
Dinaamiko kul		thermal dynamics
dinaamiko	n.f.IV	dynamics (see 14.2. above)
kul	n.m.I	heat
Fisigis cusub		Quantum physics
fisigis	n.m.II	physics (see 14.2. above)
cusub	r.adj.	new (see Note 54)
Gariir ilays		light pulse
gariir	n.m.II	pulse (see 14.1. above)
ilays	n.m.II	faint light
Goobta korontada		electric field
goob	n.f.III	expanse of open country
-ta	d.a.f.	(c.f. <u>bad</u> in <u>bad birlabeed</u> above)
koronto	n.f.IV	electricity (see 14.2. above)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-da	d.a.f.	
Hawo sare		outer space
hawo	n.f.IV	space (see 14.1. above)
sare	attr.	above (see Note 55)
Jeegaan birlab-danabeed		electro-magnetic spectrum
jeegan	n.f.III	spectrum (see 14.1. above)
birlab	n.f.III	magnet
danab	n.f.III	electricity (see 14.1. above)
-eed	gen.aff.	see App. VIII, 3.(b)

Nal qaanso		arc lamp
nal	n.m.I	light, light bulb
qaanso	n.f.IV	bow (weapon)
Qallooca ilayska		refraction
qallooc	n.m.II	crookedness
-a	d.a.m.	
ilays	n.m.II	faint light
-ka	d.a.m.	
Qulqul danab		electric current
qulqul	n.m.II	stream
danab	n.f.III	electricity (see 14.1. above)
Tamar socod		kinetic energy
tamar	n.f.III	energy (see 14.1. above)
socod	n.m.II	going, walking
soco	v.r.	go, walk (see App. IV, 1.2.5.(e))
-d	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

## 15. POLITICS AND PUBLIC AFFAIRS

### 15.1. Semantic Shift

Afti	n.f.III	referendum o.m. ascertaining consent (in private matters)
Badbaado	n.f.IV	immunity o.m. salvation
Beel	n.f.III	community o.m. settlement, group of families
Bulsho	n.f.IV	society o.m. groups working together (c.f. <u>mujtamac</u> , 15.2. below)
Cod	n.m.II	vote o.m. voice
Degao	n.m.IV	administrative district o.m. collection of settlements
Dhaqdhaqaaq	n.m.II	movement, organisation o.m. constant movement (c.f. <u>dhaqdhaqaaq</u> , 2.1. above)
Diidmo	n.f.IV	veto o.m. refusal
Gobol	n.m.II	administrative region o.m. subdivision
Gole	n.m.VI	committee, council o.m. assembly ground, assembly
Guddi	n.m.II/ n.f.III	committee, commission o.m. jury, committee in the traditional social system
Guddoon	n.m.II	committee o.m. decision
Heer	n.m.I	class o.m. stage, level (c.f. <u>dabaqad</u> , 15.2. below)
Hoggaan	n.m.II	bureau o.m. camel's halter, leading rope (c.f. <u>hoggaan</u> 2.1. above)
Jaalle	n.m.VI	comrade, citizen o.m. member of the same team in children's games
Laan	n.f.III	department (of government) o.m. branch (of tree) (c.f. <u>laan</u> , 7.1. above)

Maamul	n.m.II	administration o.m. tending, looking after
Midliidin	n.m.II	lackey, stooge o.m. servant, slave (c.f. <u>dabadhillif</u> , 15.4.4. below)
Olole	n.m.II	campaign (political) o.m. assembly of warriors around camp fire ready for emergencies
Urur	n.m.II	organisation, assembly o.m. group, gathering (c.f. <u>urur</u> 2.1. and 11.1. above and 20.1. below)
Xubin	n.f.III	member of political party o.m. part of body, limb (c.f. <u>xubin</u> , 9.1. above and 17.1. below)

## 15.2. Borrowings

Ajenda	n.f.III	agenda
Aristuqraadi	n.m.II	aristocracy (c.f. <u>aristuqraadiyad</u> , 15.3.2. below)
Aydiyooloji	n.m.II	ideology (c.f. <u>caqido</u> and <u>idoloojiyo</u> below)
Baasaboos	n.m.II	passport
Barlamaan	n.m.II	parliament
Barolitaariyad	n.f.III	proletariat (c.f. <u>xoogsato</u> , 15.3.3. below)
Boroobagando	n.f.IV	propaganda (c.f. <u>dacaayad</u> below)
Borootokal	n.m.II	protocol
Bujurwaasi	n.m.II	bourgeoisie (c.f. <u>bujurwaasiyad</u> , 15.3.2. below)
Caqido < عقيدة [aqīdat] (Ar.)	n.f.IV	ideology, doctrine (c.f. <u>aydiyooloji</u> above and <u>idoloojiyo</u> below)
Dabaqad < طبقة [ṭabaqat] (Ar.)	n.f.III	class (c.f. <u>heer</u> , 15.1. above)
Dacaayad < دعاية [da'āyat] (Ar.)	n.f.III	propaganda (c.f. <u>boroobagando</u> above)

Dawlad < دولة [dawlat] (Ar.)	n.f.III	government
Dibloomaasi	n.m.II	diplomacy (c.f. <u>dibloomaasiyad</u> , 15.3.2. below)
Dimoqraadi	n.m.II	democracy (c.f. <u>dimoqraadinimo</u> , 15.3.2. below)
Distuur < دستور [distūr] (Ar.)	n.m.II	constitution
Dokumenti < documenti (It.)	n.m.II	document
Fashiiste < fascista (It.)	n.m.VI	fascist
Fiise	n.m.VI	visa
Idoloojiyo < ideologia (It.)	n.f.IV	ideology (c.f. <u>aydiyooloji</u> and <u>caqido</u> above)
Imberiyaali	n.m.II	imperialism (c.f. <u>imberiyaaliyad</u> , 15.3.2. below)
Inqilaab < انقلاب [inqilāb] (Ar.)	n.m.II	insurrection, coup d'etat
Isticmaar < استعمار [isti'mar] (Ar.)	n.m.II	colonialism (c.f. <u>gumeysi</u> , 15.3.3. below)
Jabhad < جبهة [jabhat] (Ar.)	n.f.III	front
Jamciyad < جمعية [jamiyyat] (Ar.)	n.f.III	league, organisation
Jamhuuriyad < جمهورية [jamhūriyat] (Ar.)	n.f.III	republic
Khudbad < خطبة [khuṭbat] (Ar.)	n.f.III	speech
Kongares	n.m.II	congress
Kontorool	n.m.II	control
Kursi < كرسي [kursi] (Ar.)	n.m.V	seat (at assembly)
Leninism	n.m.II	Leninism (c.f. <u>Leniniyad</u> , 15.3.2. below)
Maarkisim	n.m.II	Marxism (c.f. <u>Maarkisiyad</u> , 15.3.2. below)
Mujtamac < مجتمع [mujtama'] (Ar.)	n.m.II	society (c.f. <u>bulsho</u> , 15.1. above)
Oryantayshan	n.m.II	orientation
Qunsul	n.m.II	consul

Ra'iisul wasaare < رئيس الوزراء [ra'isul wazarā] (Ar.)	n.m.VI	prime minister
Safaarad < سفارة [safārat] (Ar.)	n.f.III	embassy
Shuuci < شيوعية [shiū'iyat] (Ar.)	n.m.II	communism (c.f. <u>shuucinimo</u> , 15.3.2. below)
Siyaasad < سياسة [siyāsat] (Ar.)	n.f.III	policy, politics
Tawrad < د و ر ا د [dawrādh] (Ar.)	n.f.III	revolution (c.f. <u>kacaan</u> , 15.3.3. below)
Wafdi < وفد [wafd] (Ar.)	n.m.V	delegation
Waraaq < ورق [waraq] (Ar.)	n.f.III	letter, paper
Wasaarad < وزارة [wazārat] (Ar.)	n.f.III	ministry
Wasiir < وزير [wazīr] (Ar.)	n.m.II	minister
Xisbi < حزب [hisb] (Ar.)	n.m.II	party

### 15.3. Derivation

#### 15.3.1. Derivation involving semantic shift

Hoggaamin	n.f.III	leadership
hoggaan	n.m.II	leading rope (see 15.1. above)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.3.
n > m	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4. (viii)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Maamule	n.m.VI	administrator
maamul	n.m.II	administration (see 15.1. above)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Xubinnimo	n.f.IV	membership
xubin	n.f.III	member (see 15.1. above)
-nimo	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

#### 15.3.2. Derivation involving borrowings

Aristuqraadiyad	n.f.III	aristocracy
aristuqraadi	n.m.II	aristocracy (see 15.2. above)
-(i)yad	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Bujurwaasiyad	n.f.III	bourgeoisie
bujurwaasi	n.m.II	bourgeoisie (see 15.2. above)
-(i)yad	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Dawladnimo	n.f.IV	nationhood, statehood
dawlad	n.f.III	government (see 15.2. above)
-nimo	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Dibloomasiin	n.f.coll.III	diplomats
dibloomasi	n.m.II	diplomacy (see 15.2. above)
-iin	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Dibloomasiyad	n.f.III	diplomacy
dibloomasi	n.m.II	see above
-(i)yad	der.suf.	see App. V, 1
Dimoqraadinimo	n.f.IV	democracy
dimoqraadi	n.m.II	democracy (see 15.2. above)
-nimo	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Fashiistenimo	n.f.IV	fascism
fashiiste	n.m.VI	fascist (see 15.2. above)
-nimo	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Imberiyaaliyad	n.f.III	imperialism
imberiyaali	n.m.II	imperialism (see 15.2. above)
-(i)yad	der.suf.	see App. V, 1
Leniiniyad	n.f.III	Leninism (c.f. <u>Leniinisim</u> , 15.2. above)
Leniin		Lenin
-iyad	der.suf.	see App. V, 1
Maarkisiyad	n.f.III	Marxism (c.f. <u>Maarkisin</u> , 15.2. above)
Maarkis		Marx
-iyad	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Qunsuliyad	n.f.III	consulate
qunsul	n.m.II	consul (see 15.2. above)
-iyad	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Sahyuuniyad	n.f.III	Zionism
Sahyuun		Zion
-iyad	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Shuucinimo	n.f.IV	communism
shuuci	n.m.II	communism (see 15.2. above)
-nimo	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

### 15.3.3. Simple derivation

Argaggixiso	n.f.coll.IV	terrorists
argaggax	n.m.II	fear, terror
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.3.
> argaggixi		
a > i	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(ii)
-so	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Bajin	n.f.III	deterrent (c.f. <u>bajin</u> , 2.3.3. above)
baq	v.r.	be afraid (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
> baji		
q > j	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(v)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Danayste	n.m.VI	opportunist
dan	n.f.III	interest
-ayso	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.2.3.
(o)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
-te	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Danaystenimo	n.f.IV	opportunism
danayste	n.m.VI	see above
-nimo	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Degganaansho	n.f.IV	stability
deg	v.r.	descend, halt (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-an	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.2.(a) and Note 57
> deggan		
-aansho	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Dhexdhexadnimc	n.f.IV	non-alignment
dhexdhexaad	n.m.II	impartiality
dhexdhex	rtv.attr.	right in the middle (see Note 55)
-aad	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-nimo	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Doorasho	n.f.IV	elections
door	v.r.	choose (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-o	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.5.(a)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-sho	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Durugai	n.m.II	expansionism (c.f. <u>isballaadhin</u> , 15.4.3. below)
durug	v.r.	shift position (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-si	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Goosato	n.f.coll.IV	secessionists
goo	v.r.	cut (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-so	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.11.(a)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
-to	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Guddoomiye	n.m.VI	chairman
guddoon	n.m.II	committee (see 15.1. above)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.3.
> guddoomi		
n > m	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(viii)
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.suf.	see App. V, 1
Gumeysi	n.m.II	colonialism (c.f. <u>isticmaar</u> , 15.2. above)
gun	n.f.III	base, bottom
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.2.
> gumees		
n > m	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(viii)
-si	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Gumeysinimo	n.f.IV	colonialism
gumeysi	n.m.II	see above
-nimo	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Gumeyste	n.m.VI	colonialist
gumeysi	n.m.II	see above
(i)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
-te	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Horrayn	n.f.III	priority
hore	attr.	before (see Note 55)
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 4.1.1.
> horree		
-ayn	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Joojin	n.f.III	ban
joog	v.r.	remain (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
> jooji		
g > j	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(v)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Kacaan	n.m.II	revolution (c.f. <u>tawrad</u> , 15.2. above)
kac	v.r.	rise (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-aan	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Kacaarmimo	n.m.III	revolutionary spirit
kacaan	n.m.II	see above
-nimo	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Midayn	n.f.III	unification
mid	n.f.III	one
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.2.
-ayn	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Midiidinaysiin	n.f.III	exploitation of labour (c.f. <u>dhiigmiiradnimo</u> , <u>isku- dulnoolaan</u> , <u>iskukornoolaan</u> , and <u>kushageysiin</u> , 15.4.3. below)
mididiin	n.m.II	servant, lackey (see 15.1. above)
-aysii	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.2.2.
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Midnimo	n.f.IV	unity
mid	n.f.III	one
-nimo	der.aff.	see App. V, 1



Saboolnimo	n.f.IV	underdevelopment
sabool	n.m.II	poor man
-nimo	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Summadayn	n.f.III	endorsement
summad	n.f.III	mark, brand
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.2.
-ayn	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Taageerid	n.f.III	subsidy
taageero	n.f.IV	aid, help
(o)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
-i	v. ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.3.
-d	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Talis	n.m.II	administration, government (c.f. <u>talis</u> , 2.3.3. above)
tal	v.r.	be advised (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-s	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Xoogsato	n.f.coll.IV	workers, proletariat (c.f. <u>barolitaariyad</u> , 15.2. above)
xoog	n.m.I	strength, force
-so	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.10.
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-to	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Xorayn	n.f.III	liberation; sufferage
xor	n.f.III	one who is free
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.2.
-ayn	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Xuddumaysiin	n.f.III	centralisation
xuddum	n.f.III	centre (see 11.1. above)
-aysii	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.2.2.
> xuddumaysii	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(viii)
n > m		
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

#### 15.4. Compounds

##### 15.4.1. Compounds involving semantic shift

Isaaamul	n.m.II	autonomy
is	ref.pr.	itself
maamul		administration (see 15.1. above)
Kelitalis	n.m.II	dictatorial government
keli	n.m.II	state of being alone
talis		government (see 15.3.3. above)
Talishwadaag	n.m.II	federation
talis	n.m.II	see above
wadaag		sharing

##### 15.4.2. Compounds involving borrowings

Maalqabeen	n.m.II	capitalist
maal	n.m.I	property (see 3.2. above)
qab	v.r.	seize (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-een	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Tawraddiid	n.m.II	anti-revolutionary (c.f. <u>kacaandiid</u> , 15.4.4. below)
tawrad	n.f.III	revolution (see 15.2. above)
diid	v.aff.	refuse (see App. V, 3)

15.4.3. Compounds involving derivation

Cabsigelin	n.m.II	intimidation
cabsi	n.f.III	fear
gal	v.r.	enter (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
> geli		
a > e	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(ii)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Cunaqabatayn	n.f.III	boycott, sanction, blockade
cune	n.m.VI	throat
e > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
qab	v.r.	take, seize (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-o	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.5.(a)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-to	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
(o)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.2.
-ayn	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Dadiyoxoolatiris	n.m.II	census (of people and animals) (c.f. <u>tirakoob</u> , 15.4.4. below)
dad	n.m.I	people
iyó	conj.	and
xoolo	n.m.II	livestock
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
tir	v.r.	count (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-s	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Dadushaqeyn	n.f.III	social service
dad	n.m.I	see above
u	pr.part.	for (see App. IX, 1.4. and 5.1.)
shaqo	n.f.IV	work
(o)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.2.
-ayn	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Dadweyne	n.m.VI	general public, population
dad	n.m.I	see above
weyn	r.adj.	big (see Note 54)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Dalkucelin	n.f.III	repatriation
dal	n.m.I	land, country
ku	pr.part.	to (see App. IX, 1.2. and 3.4.)
cel *	v.r.	be returned (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Danjire	n.m.VI	ambassador
dan	n.f.III	interest
jir	v.r.	be (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Dhiigmiiradnimo	n.f.IV	exploitation (c.f. <u>mididinaysiin</u> , 15.3.3. above and <u>iskudulnoolaan</u> , <u>iskukornoolaan</u> and <u>kushaqaysiin</u> below)
dhiig	n.m.I	blood
miir	v.r.	filter (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-o	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.5.(a)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-d	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-nimo	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Dhuldurugsi	n.m.II	territorial expansion
dhul	n.m.I	land
durugsi		expansionism (see 15.3.3. above)
Dhulgocsato	n.f.coll.IV	feudal lords, big landowners
dhul	n.m.I	land
goosato		secessionists (see 15.3.3 above)
Dhulgoosi	n.m.II	feudalism
dhul	n.m.I	see above
goo	v.r.	cut (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-si	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Dhulhaya	n.m.II	land tenure
dhul	n.m.I	see above
hay	v.r.	have, possess (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-s	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Dhultacbe	n.m.VI	serf
dhul	n.m.I	see above
tacab	n.m.II	effort, yield
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
>tacbe		
(a)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
Dibudhacsanaan	n.f.III	underdevelopment
dib	n.f.III	back (used as adverb)
u	pr.part.	towards (see App. IX, 1.4. and 5.4.)
dhac	v.r.	fall (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-san	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.9.(a)
-aan	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Dibusocodnimo	n.f.IV	reactionary attitude
dib	n.f.III	see above
u	pr.part.	see above
soco	v.r.	go (see App. IV, 1.2.5.(e))
-d	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-nimo	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Gacanyare	n.m.VI	senior civil servant
gacan	n.f.III	hand
yar	r.adj.	small (see Note 54)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Gobannimadoonis	n.m.II	liberation, freedom
gobannimo	n.f.IV	nobility of character
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
doon	v.r.	seek, want (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-s	der.aff.	See App. V, 1
Gumaysitir	n.m.II	decolonisation
gumaysi	n.m.II	colonialism (see 15.3.3. above)
tir	v.aff.	destroy, erase (see App. V, 3)
Hantibursasho	n.f.IV	capitalism
hanti	n.f.III	possessions
bur	v.r.	take more than is needed (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-so	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.11.(a)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
-sho	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Hantigoosad	n.f.III	capitalism
hanti	n.f.III	see above
goo	v.r.	cut (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-so	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.11.(a)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
-d	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Horusmarin	n.f.III	development, progress
hor	n.f.III	front
u	pr.part.	towards (see App. IX, 1.4. and 5.4.)
mar	v.r.	pass (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Horusocodnimo	n.f.IV	progressiveness
hor	n.f.III	see above
u	pr.part.	see above
soco	v.r.	go (see App. IV, 1.2.5.(e))
-d	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-nimo	der.suf.	see App. V, 1
Isbahaysi	n.m.II	treaty of alliance
is	ref.pr.	one another
bah	n.f.III	relationship
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.2.
> isbahay		
-si	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Isballaadhin	n.f.III	expansionism (c.f. <u>durugsi</u> , 15.3.3. above)
is	ref.pr.	itself
ballaadh	n.m.II	breadth, broadness
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.3.
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Isagarabai	n.m.II	solidarity
is	ref.pr.	see above
garab	n.m.II	shoulder-blade
si	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Iskaashad	n.f.III	co-operation (c.f. <u>iskuxidhnaan</u> and <u>waxwadaqabsi</u> below)
is	ref.pr.	one another
kaal	n.f.III	aid, help
-so	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.10.
>kaasho		the phonetic change is unusual and is derived probably from difficulties in pronouncing l before s
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
-d	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Iskaashato	n.f.coll.IV	co-operative (group of people helping one another)
iskaasha		see above
-to	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Iskawaxuqabso	n.f.IV	self-help
is	ref.pr.	oneself
ka	pr.part.	from (see App. IX, 1.1. and 2.1.)
wax	n.m.I	thing
u	pr.part.	for (see App. IX, 1.4. and 5.1.)
qab	v.r.	seize (see App. IV, 1.1.)
so	v.ext.	see App. IV
Iskudulnoolaan	n.f.III	exploitation (c.f. <u>mididinaysiin</u> , 15.3.3. above, <u>dhiigmiiradnimo</u> above and <u>iskukornoolaan</u> and <u>ku-shaqaysiin</u> below)
is	ref.pr.	see above
ku	pr.part.	on (see App. IX, 1.2. and 3.3.)
dul	n.f.III	back
nool	adj.	live
-aan	der. aff.	see App. V, 1

Iskufilnaansho	n.f.III	self-sufficiency
is	ref.pr.	see above
ku	pr.part.	see above
fil	v.r.	expect (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-an	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.2.(a)
(a)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
-aansho	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Iskukalsoonaan	n.f.III	self-reliance
is	ref.pr.	see above
ku	pr.part.	see above
kal	n.m.I	trust
-soon	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.11
-aan	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Iskukornoolaan	n.f.III	exploitation, social parasitism (c.f. <u>mididinaysiin</u> , 15.3.3. above, <u>dhiigmiiradnimo</u> and <u>iskudulnoolaan</u> above and <u>kushagaysiin</u> below)
is	ref.pr.	see above
ku	pr.part.	see above
kor	n.m.I	top
nool	adj.	live
-aan	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Iskunoolaan	n.f.III	co-existence
is	ref.pr.	one another
ku	pr.part.	see above
nool	adj.	see above
-aan	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Iskuxidhnaan	n.f.III	co-operation (c.f. <u>iskaashad</u> above and <u>waxwadaqabsi</u> below)
is	ref.pr.	see above
ku	pr. part.	see above
xidh	v.r.	tie together (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-an	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.2.(a)
(a)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
-aan	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Isalaqabasho	n.f.IV	team work
is	ref.pr.	see above
la	pr.part.	with (see App. IX, 1.3. and 4.1.)
qab	v.r.	seize (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-o	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.5.(a)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-sho	der.suf.	see App. V, 1
Isalaweynaan	n.f.III	aggrandisement
is	ref.pr.	see above
la	pr.part.	see above
weyn	r.adj.	big (see Note 54)
-aan	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Kacaandiidnimo	n.f.IV	anti-revolutionary spirit
kacaan	n.m.II	revolution (see 15.3.3. above)
diid	v.aff.	refuse (see App. V, 3)
-nimo	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Kalasarrayn	n.f.III	hierarchy
kala	adv.	apart, separately
sare	attr.	above (see Note 55)
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 4.1.1.
> sarree		
-ayn	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Kalasoocid	n.f.III	segregation
kala	adv.	see above
sooc	v.r.	sort, divide into groups (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-id	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Kaqaadid	n.f.III	confiscation
ka	pr.part.	from (see App. IX, 1.1. and 2.1.)
qaad	v.r.	take (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-id	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Kasaarid	n.f.III	expulsion (c.f. <u>kasaarid</u> , 2.4.2. above)
ka	pr.part.	see above
saar	v.r.	take out (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-id	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Kuqaybsane	n.m.VI	attaché
ku	pr.part.	to (see App. IX, 1.2. and 3.4.)
qayb	n.f.III	part
-ean	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.8
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Kushaqaysiin	n.f.III	exploitation (c.f. <u>midiidinaysiin</u> , 15.3.3. above and <u>dhiigmiiradnimo</u> , <u>iskudulnoolaan</u> and <u>isku-</u> <u>kornoolaan</u> above)
ku	ref.pr.	on (see App. IX, 1.2. and 3.3.)
shaqo	n.f.IV	work
(o)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
-aysii	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.2.2.
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Lataliye	n.m.VI	counsellor
la	pr.part.	with (see App. IX, 1.3. and 4.1.)
tal*	v.r.	be advised (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Madaxweyne	n.m.VI	president
madax	n.m.II	head
wayn	r.adj.	big (see Note 54)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Shirweyne	n.m.VI	summit conference
shir	n.m.II	meeting
weyn	r.adj.	big (see Note 54)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Siidoolnimo	n.f.IV	emigration
sii	adv.	in that direction
dool	n.m.I	destination
-nimo	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Soodoolnimo	n.f.IV	immigration
soo	adv.	in this direction
doolnimo		see above

Waxwadaqabsi	n.m.II	co-operation (c.f. <u>iskaashad</u> and <u>isku-xidhnaan</u> above)
wax	n.m.I	thing
wada	adv.	together
qab	v.r.	hold, seize (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-si	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

#### 15.4.4. Simple Compounds

Ballangal	n.m.II	commitment
ballan	n.m.II	promise
gal	v.aff.	enter (see App. V, 3)
Dabadhilif	n.m.II	stooge, lackey (c.f. <u>mididiin</u> , 15.1. above)
dabo	n.f.IV	tail
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
dhilif		tip of the tail of a sheep which moves up and down when a sheep walks
Gobannimadoon	n.m.II	freedom fighter
gobannimo	n.f.IV	nobility of character, independence
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
doon	v.aff.	seek, want (see App. V, 3)
Hantiwadaag	n.m.II	socialism
hanti	n.f.III	possession, property
wadaag		sharing
Iskahorjeed	n.m.II	opposition
is	ref.pr.	itself
ka	pr.part.	from (see App. IX, 1.1. and 2.1.)
hor	n.f.III	front
jeed	v.aff.	turn (see App. V, 3)

Iskudar	n.m.II	integration
is	ref.pr.	itself
ku	pr.part.	to (see App. IX, 1.2. and 3.4.)
dar	v.aff.	add (see App. V, 3)
Ka-aamuus	n.m.II	abstention
ka	pr.part.	from (see App. IX, 1.1. and 2.1.)
aamuus	v.aff.	be silent (see App. V, 3)
Kacaandiid	n.m.II	anti-revolutionary (c.f. <u>tawraddiid</u> , 15.4.2. above)
kacaan	n.m.II	revolution (see 15.3.3. above)
diid	v.aff.	refuse (see App. V, 3)
Kaqaybgal	n.m.II	participation
ka	pr.part.	from (see App. IX, 1.1. and 2.1.)
qayb	n.f.III	part
gal	v.aff.	enter (see App. V, 3)
Latashi	n.m.II	joint consultation (c.f. <u>wadatashi</u> below)
la	pr.part.	with (see App. IX, 1.3. and 4.1.)
tashi		act of deciding
Madaxtooyo	n.f.IV	presidency
madax	n.m.II	head
tooyo	n.aff.	see App. V, 2
Magangal	n.m.II	asylum
magan	n.f.III	fugitive
gal	v.aff.	enter (see App. V, 3)
Midabkalasoc	n.m.III	racism, racial discrimination
midab	n.m.II	colour
kala	adv.	separately
-sooc	v.aff.	sort, divide into groups (see App. V, 3)

Midabtakoor	n.f.III	apartheid
midab	n.m.II	see above
takoor		act of sorting, dividing, isolating
Nabaddiid	n.m.II	warmonger
nabad	n.f.III	peace
diid	v.aff.	refuse (see App. V, 3)
Siihay	n.m.VI	charge d'affaires
si	adv.	in that direction
-hay	n.aff.	see App. V, 2
Tirakoob	n.m.II	census (c.f. <u>dadiyoxoolatiris</u> , 15.4.3. above)
tiro	n.f.IV	number
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
koob	v.aff.	include (see App. V, 3)
Wadahadal	n.m.II	discussion, negotiation
wada	adv.	together
hadal		word, sentence
Wadajir	n.m.II	solidarity, unity
wada	adv.	see above
jir	v.aff.	be (see App. V, 3)
Wadatashi	n.m.II	joint consultation (c.f. <u>latashi</u> above)
wada	adv.	see above
tashi		act of deciding
Xadgudub	n.m.II	territorial violation
xad	n.m.I	boundary, frontier
gudub	v.aff.	pass beyond, offend (see App. V, 3)

Xiriirnaq	n.m.II	rapprochement
xiriir	n.m.II	relations
naq	v.aff.	return (see App. V, 3)
Xoghaye	n.m.VI	secretary
xog	n.f.III	secret
hay	n.aff.	see App. V, 2
Xukundiid	n.m.II	dissident
xukun	n.m.II	justice (see 10.2. above)
diid	v.aff.	see App. V, 3

#### 15.5. Phrase Groups

Bulsho isku mid ah		homogenous society
bulsho	n.f.IV	society (see 15.1. above)
is	ref.pr.	itself
ku	pr.part.	to (see App. IX, 1.2. and 3.4.)
mid	n.f.III	one
ah	rel.cls.	which is (see App. VI, 3)
Dabaqad kadeedan		oppressed class
dabaqad	n.f.III	class (see 15.2. above)
kadeedan	v.adj.	exploited (see Note 52)
kadeed	v.r.	pester (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-an	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.2.(a)
Dabaqad mujtamac		social class
dabaqad	n.f.III	see above
mujtamac	n.m.II	society (see 15.2. above)



Dalalka sancada leh		industrialised nations
dalal	n.m.pl.I	countries
-ka	d.a.m.	
sanco	n.f.IV	industry (see 5.1. above)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-da	d.a.f.	
leh	rel.cls.	which have (see App. VI, 3)
Dalalka soo kordhaya		developing countries
dalalka		see above
soo	adv.	in this direction
kordhaya	rel.cls.	which are becoming increased (see App. VI, 2)
kordh	v.r.	become increased (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-aya	v.ter.	third person singular, present continuous tense
Dawladaha waaweyn		"super-powers"
dawlado	n.m.pl.III	governments (see <u>dawlad</u> , 15.2. above)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-ha	d.a.m.	
waaweyn	r.adj.pl.	big (see Note 54)
Dawladda dabadhilifka ah		puppet government
dawlad	n.f.III	see above
-da	d.a.f.	
dabadhilif	n.m.II	stooge, lackey (see 15.4.4. above)
-ka	d.a.m.	
ah	rel.cls.	which is (see App. VI, 3)

Dhimidda hubka halista ah		strategic arms limitation
dhimid	n.f.III	reduction
dhin	v.r.	reduce (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-id	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
> dhimi		
n > m	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(viii)
-da	d.a.f.	
hubka halista ah		nuclear weapons (see 2.5. above)
Fiise dalkugal		entry visa
fiise	n.m.VI	visa (see 15.2. above)
dalkugal	n.m.II	entry into country
dal	n.m.I	country
ku	pr.part.	in (see App. IX, 1.2. and 3.2.)
gal	v.aff.	enter (see App. V, 3)
Fiise dalkumar		transit visa
fiise	n.m.VI	see above
dalkumar	n.m.II	act of passing through a country
dal	n.m.I	see above
ku	pr.part.	see above
mar	v.aff.	pass (see App. V, 3)
Fiise gudub ah		transit visa
fiise	n.m.VI	see above
gudub	n.m.II	act of passing through
ah	rel.cls.	which is (see App. VI, 3)

Golaha ammaanka		security council
gole	n.m.VI	council (see 15.1. above)
e > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
-ha	d.a.m.	
ammaan	n.m.II	safety, security
-ka	d.a.m.	
Golaha wasiirrada		cabinet
golaha		see above
wasiirro	n.f.pl.II	ministers (see <u>wasiir</u> , 15.2. above)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
-da	d.a.f.	
Guddiga joogtada ah		standing committee
guddi	n.m.II	committee (see 15.1. above)
-ga	d.a.m.	
joogto	n.f.III	present time, permanency
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
-da	d.a.f.	
ah	rel.cla.	which is (see App. VI, 3)
Gumeysi cusub		neo-colonialism
gumeysi	n.m.II	colonialism (see 15.3.3. above)
cusub	r.adj.	new (see Note 54)
Gumeysi maskaxeed		brain-washing (lit. colonisation of the brain)
gumeysi	n.m.II	see above
maskax	n.f.III	brain
-eed	gen.aff.	see App. VIII, 3(b)

Habka dhaqanka dhaqaalaha		socio-economic formation (c.f. <u>qaabka dhismaha mujtamaca</u> below)
hab	n.m.I	pattern, model
-ka	d.a.m.	
dhaqan	n.m.II	culture
-ka	d.a.m.	
dhaqaale	n.m.VI	economy (see 3.1. above)
e > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
-ha	d.a.m.	
Halgaanka heerarka		class struggle
halgaan	n.m.II	fight
-ka	d.a.m.	
heerar	n.m.pl.I	classes (see <u>heer</u> , 15.1. above)
-ka	d.a.m.	
Hantiwadaagga cilmiga ku dhisan		scientific socialism
hantiwadaag	n.m.II	socialism (see 15.4.4. above)
-ga	d.a.m.	
cilmi	n.m.II	science (see 7.2. above)
-ga	d.a.m.	
ku	pr.part.	on (see App. IX, 1.2. and 3.3.)
dhisan	v.adj.	built, constructed (see Note 52)
dhis	v.r.	build (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-an	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.2.(a)
Heerka nolosha		standard of living
heer	n.m.I	level, stage
-ka	d.a.m.	
nolol	n.f.III	life
-ta	d.a.f.	
> sha		see App. I, 1.4.(vii) and App. II, 3.3.

Inqilaab dhicisoobay		abortive coup
inqilaab	n.m.II	coup (see 15.2. above)
dhicisoobay		which has miscarried
dhicis	n.m.II	(see App. VI, 2)
-ow	v.ext.	miscarriage
ow > oob	ph.alt.	see App. IV, 2.1.7.(a)
-ay	v.ter.	see App. I, 1.4.(xiii)
		third person singular, past tense
Iswaafajinta siyaasadaha		integrated policy
is	ref.pr.	itself
waafaq	v.r.	correspond (see App. VI, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
> waafaji		
q > j	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(v)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-ta	d.a.f.	
siyaasad	n.f.III	policy (see 15.2. above)
-da	d.a.f.	
Jamciyadda Quruumaha Midoobey		United Nations Organisation
jamciyad	n.f.III	league (see 15.2. above)
-da	d.a.f.	
quruumo	n.m.pl.V	nations
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-ha	d.a.m.	
midoobey	rel.cls.	which have become one
		(see App. VI, 2)
mid	n.f.III	one
-ow	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.7.(a)
ow > oob	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(xiii)
-ay	v.ter.	third person singular, past tense

Kacaanka warshadaha		industrial revolution
kacaan	n.m.II	revolution (see 15.3.3. above)
-ka	d.a.m.	
warshado	n.m.pl.III	factories (see <u>warshad</u> ,
o > a	ph.alt.	5.2. above)
-ha	d.a.m.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
Kuqaybsanaha arrimaha dhaqanka		cultural attaché
kuqaybsane	n.m.VI	attache (see 15.4.3. above)
e > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-ha	d.a.m.	
arrimo	n.m.pl.III	affairs, matters
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
dhaqan	n.m.II	culture
-ka	d.a.m.	
Lataliyaha ganacsiga		commercial counsellor
lataliye	n.m.VI	counsellor (see 15.4.3. above)
e > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-ha	d.a.m.	
ganacsi	n.m.II	trade (see 3.3.2. above)
-ga	d.a.m.	

Loollanka hubka		arms race (c.f. <u>tartanka hubka</u> below)
loollan	n.m.II	competition (see <u>sicir loollan</u> , 5.5. above)
-ka	d.a.m.	
hub	n.m.I	arms, weapons
-ka	d.a.m.	
Maalqabeen dhexe		member of middle class
maalqabeen	n.m.II	capitalist (see 15.4.2. above)
dhexe	attr.	middle (see Note 55)
Maalqabeen yar		member of petite bourgeoisie
maalqabeen	n.m.II	see above
yar	r.adj.	small (see Note 54)
Qaabka dhismaha mujtamaca		socio-economic formation (c.f. <u>habka dhaganka dhagaalaha</u> above)
qaab	n.m.II	pattern, shape
-ka	d.a.m.	
dhismo	n.m.II	building
e > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-ha	d.a.m.	
mujtamac	n.m.II	society (see 15.2. above)
-a	d.a.m.	

Qaabka waxwadatacabka iyo waxwadalahaanshaha		primitive communal system
qaabka		see above
wax	n.m.I	thing
wada	adv.	together
tacab	n.m.II	effort
-ka	d.a.m.	
iyo	conj.	and
waxwada		see above
lah	v.r.	have (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-aansho	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
da	d.a.f.	
Shaqaalaha dawladda		civil servant
shaqaale	n.m.II	worker
e > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-ha	d.a.m.	
dawlad	n.f.III	government (see 15.2. above)
-da	d.a.f.	
Sinnaanta mujtamaca		social equality
sim	v.r.	be level (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-an	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.2.(a)
(a)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
m > n		m and n cannot stand together and so m is coloured by succeeding n
-aan	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-ta	d.a.f.	
mujtamac	n.m.II	society (see 15.2. above)
-a	d.a.m.	

Siyaasadda isballaadhintaa		expansionist policy
siyaasad	n.f.III	policy (see 15.2. above)
-da	d.a.f.	
isballaadhin	n.f.III	expansionism (see 15.4.3. above)
-ta	d.a.f.	
Siyaasadda nabadkumool-aanshada		policy of peaceful co-existence
siyaasadda		see above
nabad	n.f.III	peace
ku	pr.part.	in (see App. IX, 1.2. and 3.2.)
nool	adj.	live
-aansho	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. IV, 1.4.(i)
-da	d.a.f.	
Tartanka hubka		arms race (c.f. <u>loollanka</u> hubka above)
tartan	n.m.II	competition (see 5.1. above)
-ka	d.a.m.	
hub	n.m.I	arms, weapons
-ka	d.a.m.	
Wadajirka dalka		national unity
wadajir	n.m.II	solidarity (see 15.4.4. above)
-ka	d.a.m.	
dal	n.m.I	country
-ka	d.a.m.	
War cad		communiqué
war	n.m.I	news, report
cad	r.adj.	white, clear (see Note 54)

Waraaq murtiyeed		communiqué
waraaq	n.f.III	letter, paper (see 15.2. above)
murti	n.f.III	important talk
-y-		junction consonant
-eed	gen.aff.	see App. VIII, 3(b)
Warqadaha aqoonsiga		letters of credence
warqado	n.m.pl.III	letters (see <u>warqad</u> , 5.2. above)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-ha	d.a.m.	
aqoonsi	n.m.II	recognition
-ga	d.a.m.	
Xaaladda degdegga ah		state of emergency
xaalad	n.f.III	situation
-da	d.a.f.	
degdeg	n.m.II	speed, urgency
-ga	d.a.m.	
ah	rel.cls.	which is (see App. VI, 3)
Xaashida aqoonsiga		identity card
xaashi	n.f.III	letter, document
-da	d.a.f.	
aqoonsi	n.m.II	recognition
-ga	d.a.m.	

Xiriirka dibloomaasiga ah		diplomatic relations
xiriir	n.m.II	relationship
-ka	d.a.m.	
dibloomaasi	n.m.II	diplomacy (see 15.2. above)
-ga	d.a.m.	
ah	rel.cls.	which is (see App. VI, 3)
Xisbiga qunyarsocodka ah		conservative party
xisbi	n.m.II	party (see 15.2. above)
-ga	d.a.m.	
qunyar	adv.	slowly
socod	n.m.II	act of going
soco	v.r.	go (see App. IV, 1.2.5.(e))
-d	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-ka	d.a.m.	
ah	rel.cls.	which is (see App. VI, 3)
Xisbiga taliska gacanta ku haysta		ruling party
xisbiga		see above
talis	n.m.II	administration, government (see 15.3.3. above)
-ka	d.a.m.	
gacan	n.f.III	hand
-ta	d.a.f.	
ku	pr.part.	in (see App. IX, 1.2. and 3.2.)
haysta	rel.cls.	which has (see App. VI, 2)
hay	v.r.	have (see App. IV, 1.1)
-so	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.11.(a)
(o)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
-ta	v.ter.	third person singular, present general tense

Xisbiga xorta ah		liberal party
xisbiga		see above
xor	n.f.III	one who is free
-ta	d.a.f.	
ah	rel.cls.	which is (see App. VI, 3)
Xoghaye guud		secretary-general
xoghaye	n.m.VI	secretary (see 15.4.1. above)
guud	adj.	general
Xuquuqda mujtamaca		civil rights
xuquuq	n.f.pl.V	rights (see 10.2. above)
-da	d.a.f.	
mujtamac	n.m.II	society (see 15.2. above)
-a	d.a.m.	

# 16. PRESS, PRINTING AND PUBLISHING

## 16.1. Semantic Shift

Arar	n.f.III	preface o.m. direction (c.f. <u>hordhac</u> and <u>soobandhig</u> , 16.4.2. below)
Dhambaal	n.m.II	editorial o.m. message

## 16.2. Borrowings

Faaqidat < فاقدة [fāqidat] (Ar.)	n.f.III	review, comment
Madbacad < مطبعة [maṭba'at] (Ar.)	n.f.III	printing-press; publishing house
Maqaal < مقال [maqāl] (Ar.)	n.m.II	newspaper article

## 16.3. Derivation

### 16.3.1. Simple derivation

Hagaaajin	n.f.III	proof-reader
hagaag	n.m.II	straightness
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.3.
> hagaajji		
g > j	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(v)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Hagaaajiye	n.m.VI	proof-reader
hagaajji	v.r. + ext.	see above
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Muujiin	n.f.III	illustration
muuq	v.r.	be evident (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
> muuji		
q > j	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(v)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Qaybin	n.f.III	circulation
qayb	n.f.III	distribution, share
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.3.
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Tusid	n.f.III	index
tus	v.r.	show (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-id	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Xigasho	n.f.III	plagiarism
xig	v.r.	copy, repeat (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-o	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.5.(a)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(i)
-sho	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

## 16.4. Compounds

### 16.4.1. Compounds involving derivation

Iskawarramid	n.f.III	autobiography
is	ref.pr.	oneself
ka	pr.part.	from (see App. IX, 1.1. and 2.1.)
war	n.m.I	news
-an	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.1.
> warran		
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
> warrami		
n > m	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(viii)
-d	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Wargeys	n.m.II	newspaper
war	n.m.I	see above
gee	v.r.	bring, take (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
i > y		
-s	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Wariye	n.m.VI	reporter
war	n.m.I	see above
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.3.
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

16.4.2. Simple compounds

Buugagaheeg	n.m.II	bibliography
buugag	n.m.pl.I	books (see <u>buug</u> , 7.2. above)
sheeg	v.aff.	say, tell (see App. V, 3)
Gogoldhig	n.m.II	introduction
gogol	n.f.III	material which is spread out
dhig	v.aff.	place (see App. V, 3)
Hordhac	n.f.II	preface (c.f. <u>arar</u> , 16.1. above and <u>soobandhig</u> below)
hor	n.f.III	front
dhac	v.aff.	happen (see App. V, 3)
Mahadnaq	n.m.II	acknowledgement
mahad	n.f.III	gratitude
naq	v.aff.	return (see App. V, 3)

Qofkahadal	n.m.II	biography
qof	n.m.I	person
ka	pr.part.	from (see App. IX, 1.1. and 2.1.)
hadal		word, conversation
Soobandhig	n.m.II	preface (c.f. <u>arar</u> , 16.1. above and <u>hordhac</u> above)
soo	adv.	in this direction
ban	n.m.I	plateau; stage
dhig	v.aff.	place (see App. V, 3)



17. SPEC

17.1. Semantic Shift

Bardooddan	n.m.II	athletics o.m. game (c.f. <u>atleetiko</u> , 17.2. above)
Cayaar	n.m.III	sport o.m. game (c.f. <u>isboorti</u> , 17.2. below)
Culays	n.m.II	shot-put o.m. heaviness (c.f. <u>culays</u> , 4.1. and 14.1. above)
Dhibic	n.f.III	point, goal o.m. spot, speck, drip (c.f. <u>dhibic</u> , 9.1. above)
Gaashaan	n.m.II	full-back (football) o.m. shield
Heegan	n.m.II	back (football) o.m. rear-guard; alert
Jimicsi	n.m.II	<u>gymnastics</u> o.m. act of stretching (c.f. <u>jimicsi</u> , 7.1. and 12.1. above)
Kayd	n.m.II	substitute player o.m. something set aside (c.f. <u>kayd</u> , 3.1. above)
Koox	n.f.III	team o.m. crowd, group
Nasasho	n.f.IV	half-time o.m. rest
Gayb	n.f.III	league o.m. part
Shebez	n.m.II	goal net o.m. fishing net
Xubin	n.f.III	team member o.m. limb (c.f. <u>xubin</u> , 9.1. and 15.1. above)

17.2. Borrowings

Atleetiko < <u>atletica</u> (It.)	n.f.IV	athletics (c.f. <u>bardooddan</u> , 17.1. above)
Qigaab < عقاب [iqāb] (Ar.)	n.f.III	penalty
Finaal	n.m.II	final
Garoon	n.m.II	ground, pitch (c.f. <u>garoon</u> , 2.2. above)
Gool	n.m.I	goal
Isboorti	n.m.II	sport (c.f. <u>cayaar</u> , 17.1. above)
Jenseestiko < <u>ginnastica</u> (It.)	n.f.IV	gymnastics (c.f. <u>jimicsi</u> , 17.1. above)
Rikoor	n.m.II	record
Taanis	n.m.II	tennis
Tuute < <u>tuuta sportiva</u> (It.)	n.m.VI	track-suit (c.f. <u>dhar cayaareed</u> , 17.5. below)

17.3. Derivation

17.3.1. Derivation involving semantic shift

Bardooddame	n.m.VI	athlete
bardooddan	n.m.II	athletics (see 17.1. above)
n > m	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(viii)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

17.3.2. Simple derivation

Dhexeeye	n.m.VI	centre-half (football)
dhax	attr.	middle (see Note 55)
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 4.1.1.
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

#### 17.4. Compounds

##### 17.4.1. Compound involving semantic shift

Cayaaryahan	n.m.II	sportsman
cayaar	n.f.III	sport (see 17.1. above)
-yahan	n.aff.	see App. V, 2

##### 17.4.2. Compounds involving borrowings

Goolhaye	n.m.VI	goalkeeper
gool	n.m.I	goal (see 17.2. above)
-haye	n.aff.	see App. V, 2
Goolkalaad	n.m.II	goal-kick
gool	n.m.I	see above
ka	pr.part.	from (see App. IX, 1.1. and 2.1.)
laad	v.aff.	kick (see App. V, 3)

##### 17.4.3. Compounds involving derivation

Iskugudbin	n.f.III	pass (football)
is	ref.pr.	itself
ku	pr.part.	to (see App. IX, 1.2. and 3.4.)
gudub	v.r.	pass (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
> gudbi		
(u)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Isreebid	n.f.III	knockout competition
is	ref.pr.	one another
reeb	v.r.	halt, prevent (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-id	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

##### 17.4.4. Simple compounds

Baaljoog	n.m.II	winger (football)
baal	n.f.III	side
joog	v.aff.	be, remain (see App. V, 3)
Calanhaye	n.m.VI	linesman
calan	n.m.II	flag
-haye	n.aff.	see App. V, 2
Geeskalaad	n.m.II	corner-kick
gees	n.f.III	corner
ka	pr.part.	from (see App. IX, 1.1. and 2.1.)
laad	v.aff.	kick (see App. V, 3)
Horjoog	n.m.II	forward (football)
hor	n.f.III	front
joog	v.aff.	be, remain (see App. V, 3)
Weerare	n.m.VI	attacker, forward (football)
weerar	n.m.II	attack
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Weeraryahan	n.m.II	attacker, forward (football)
weerar	n.m.II	see above
-yahan	n.aff.	see App. V, 2

# 17.5. Phrase Groups

dhar cayaareed		track-suit (c.f. <u>tuute</u> , 17.2. above)
dhar	n.m.I	clothing
cayaar	n.f.III	sport (see 17.1. above)
-eed	gen.aff.	see App. VIII, 3(b)
Laad qalloocan		indirect free kick
laad	n.m.I	kick
qalloocan	v.adj.	crooked (see Note 52)
qallooc	v.r.	be crooked (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-an	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.2.(a)
Laad qummaati ah		direct free kick
laad	n.m.I	see above
qummaati	n.m.II	straightness
ah	rel.cls.	which is (see App. VI, 3)
Ul taanis		tennis racquet
ul	n.f.III	stick
taanis	n.m.II	tennis (see 17.2. above)

# 18. TOWN AND ITS FACILITIES

## 18.1. Borrowings

Baar	n.m.I	bar, cafe
Madaar < , مطار [maṭār] (Ar.)	n.m.II	airport (c.f. <u>gegida dayuuradaha</u> , 18.5. below)

## 18.2. Derivation

### 18.2.1. Simple derivation

Kecnid	n.f.III	supply (of essential services)
keen	v.r.	bring (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-id	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

## 18.3. Compounds

### 18.3.1. Compound involving derivation

Dalxiisnimo	n.f.IV	tourism
dal	n.m.I	country
xiis	n.m.I	interest
-nimo	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Magaaloqorsheeye	n.m.VI	town planner
magaalo	n.f.IV	town
qorshe	n.m.II	plan
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.2.
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Magaaloqorshayn	n.f.III	town planning
magaaloqorshee	v.r. + ext.	see above
-ayn	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Nalbixin	n.f.III	electrification (c.f. korontofidin, 18.3.2. below)
nal	n.m.I	light, light bulb
bax	v.r.	go out, issue
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
> bixi		
a > i	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(11)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

### 18.3.2. Compound involving borrowing and derivation

Korontofidin	n.f.III	electrification (c.f. nalbixin, 18.3.1. above)
koronto	n.f.IV	electricity (see 14.2. above)
fid	v.r.	be spread, stretched out (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

### 18.3.3. Simple compounds

Magaalomadax	n.m.II	capital city
magaalo	n.f.IV	town
madax		head
Wasakhqaad	n.m.II	drainage
wasakh	n.f.III	dirt (c.f. وسخ [wasakh](Ar.))
qaad	v.aff.	take (see App. V, 3)

### 18.4. Phrase Groups

Gegida dayuuradaha		airport (c.f. madaar, 18.1. above)
gegi	n.f.III	cleared open space
-da	d.a.f.	
dayuurado	n.m.pl.III	aircraft (see dayuurad, 2.2. above)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
-ha	d.a.m.	
Guriga korontada		power station
guri	n.m.II	house
-ga	d.a.m.	
koronto	n.f.IV	electricity (see 14.2. above)
o > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
-da	d.a.f.	
Wadda lugeed		pavement
wad	n.f.III	path
-da	d.a.f.	
lug	n.f.III	foot
-eed	gen.aff.	see App. VIII, 3(b)

# 19. VEHICLES AND VEHICLE PARTS

## 19.1. Semantic Shift

Cayn	n.m.I	fan-belt o.m. girth-strap for camel
Dadbin	n.m.II	axle o.m. tent-pole
Gaadiid	n.m.II	transport o.m. beasts of burden
Gariirro	n.f.pl.II	suspension o.m. trembling (c.f. <u>moollo</u> , 19.2. below)
Haan	n.f.III	petrol-tank o.m. bucket
Il	n.f.III	light o.m. eye
Jalxad	n.f.III	radiator o.m. water pot made of clay designed to keep water cool (c.f. <u>radiyestar</u> , 19.2. below)
Lingah	n.m.II	gasket o.m. binding

## 19.2. Borrowings

Bansiin	n.m.II	petrol (c.f. <u>batrool</u> below)
Baageel	n.m.II	bicycle
Bateri	n.m.II	battery
Batrool	n.m.II	petrol (c.f. <u>bansiin</u> above)
Bikaab	n.m.II	pick-up truck
Bistoon	n.m.II	piston
Fuyuul	n.m.II	fuel
Garaash	n.m.II	garage
Geeresh	n.m.II	garage
Isbeerbaadh	n.f.III	spare-part

JaaJ	n.m.II	charge (battery)
Jiib	n.m.I	jeep
Kushineeto < <u>cuscinetto</u> (It.)	n.f.IV	ball-bearings
Matoor	n.m.II	motor, engine
Moollo < <u>molla</u> (It.)	n.f.IV	suspension (c.f. <u>gariirro</u> , 19.1. above)
Mooto < <u>moto</u> (It.)	n.f.IV	motorcycle
Radiyestar	n.m.II	radiator (c.f. <u>jalxaad</u> , 19.1. above)
Rimoor < <u>rimorchio</u> (It.)	n.m.II	trailer
Shilindaar	n.m.II	cylinder
Shufeer	n.m.II	driver
Taargo < <u>targa</u> (It.)	n.f.IV	number-plate
Tareen	n.m.II	train

## 19.3. Derivation

### 19.3.1. Simple Derivation

Cusboonayn	n.f.III	overhaul
cusub	r.adj.	new (see Note 54)
-oon	v.ext.	see App. IV, 3.2.3.
> cusboon		
(u)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 3.2.2.
-ayn	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Daarid	n.f.III	ignition
daar	v.r.	light, ignite (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-id	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Degdejiye	n.m.VI	accelerator
degdeg	n.m.II	speed
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.3.
> degdeji		
g > j	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(v)
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Hurid	n.f.III	combustion
hur	v.r.	catch fire (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-id	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Joojiye	n.m.VI	brake
joog	v.r.	remain (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
> jooji		
g > j	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(v)
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Kiciye	n.m.VI	starter
kac	v.r.	raise, wake (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
> kici		
a > i	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(ii)
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Qaybiye	n.m.VI	carburettor (c.f. <u>qaybiye</u> , 11.3.1. above)
qayb	n.f.III	distribution
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.3.
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

#### 19.4. Compounds

##### 19.4.1. Compounds involving borrowing

Batroolbax	n.m.II	petrol consumption (c.f. <u>batroolcunis</u> , 19.4.3. below)
batrool	n.m.II	petrol (see 19.2. above)
bax	v.aff.	go out, leave (see App. V, 3)

##### 19.4.2. Compounds involving derivation

Orodbeeg	n.m.VI	speedometer
orod	n.m.II	running
beeg	v.r.	measure (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Qiiqsaare	n.m.VI	exhaust
qiiq	n.m.I	smoke
saar	v.r.	take out (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

##### 19.4.3. Compound involving borrowing and derivation

Batroolcunis	n.f.III	petrol consumption (c.f. <u>batroolbax</u> , 19.4.1. above)
batrool	n.m.II	petrol (see 19.2. above)
cun	v.r.	eat, consume (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-s	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

19.4.4. Simple compounds

Dayactir	n.m.II	maintenance
dayac	n.m.II	neglect
tir	v.aff.	erase, destroy (see App. V, 3)
Saliidbax	n.m.II	oil consumption
saliid	n.f.III	oil
bax	v.aff.	go out, leave (see App. V, 3)

19.5. Phrase Groups

Habka biyoxidhka		hydraulic system
hab	n.m.I	method, system
-ka	d.a.m.	
biyoxidh	n.m.II	dam (see 1.3.2. above)
-ka	d.a.m.	
Habka huridda		combustion system
habka		see above
hurid	n.f.III	combustion (see 19.3.1. above)
-da	d.a.f.	
Habka qaboojiska		cooling system
habka		see above
qaboojis	n.m.II	act of making cold
qabow	v.r.	be cold (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
> qabooji		
ow > ooji	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(v)
-s	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-ka	d.a.m.	

Il dhuuban		headlight beam
il	n.f.III	light (see 19.1. above)
dhuuban	v.adj.	slender (see Note 52)
dhuub	v.r.	whittle, make slender (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-an	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.2.(a)
Joojiye gacmeed		hand brake
joojiye	n.m.VI	brake (see 19.3.2. above)
gacan	n.f.III	hand
n > m	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(viii)
> gacm		
(a)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
-eed	gen.aff.	see App. VIII, 3(b)
Joojiye neefeed		air-brake
joojiye	n.m.VI	see above
neef	n.f.III	breath, air
-eed	gen.aff.	see App. VIII, 3.(b)
Qaboojis biyood		water-cooling
qaboojis	n.m.II	act of cooling (see <u>habka qaboojiska</u> above)
biyo	n.m.pl.III	water
(o)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
-ood	gen.aff.	see App. VIII, 3(c)
Qaboojis dabayleed		air-cooling
qaboojis	n.m.II	see above
dabayl	n.f.III	wind
-eed	gen.aff.	see App. VIII, 3(b)

Uaha xiriirka		connecting rod
ul	n.f.III	stick
-ta	d.a.f.	
> sha		see App. I, 1.4.(vii) and App. II, 3.3.
xiriir	n.m.II	relation, connection
-ka	d.a.m.	
Xoog faras		horse-power
xoog	n.m.I	strength
faras	n.m.II	horse

## 20. WORK

### 20.1. Semantic Shift

Agaasin	n.m.II	management o.m. tending of sheep and goats
Cirfiidad	n.f.III	bulldozer o.m. evil spirit (c.f. <u>baldoos</u> , 20.2 and <u>burburiye</u> , 20.3.2. below)
Jago	n.f.IV	vacancy o.m. plot of ground
Urur	n.m.II	union o.m. group, gathering (c.f. <u>urur</u> , 2.1., 11.1., and 15.1. above)

### 20.2. Borrowings

Arji < ارجي [ārji] (Ar.)	n.m.V	application (for vacancy)
Baldoos	n.m.II	bulldozer (c.f. <u>cirfiidad</u> , 20.1. above and <u>burburiye</u> 20.3.2. below)
Cinjineer	n.m.II	engineer
Injineer	n.m.II	engineer
Isbeerti	n.m.II	expert (c.f. <u>khabiir</u> below, <u>xeeldheere</u> 20.4.3. and <u>agoonyahan</u> 20.4.5. below)
Iskafatoor	n.m.II	excavator
Khabiir < خبير [khabir] (Ar.)	n.m.II	expert (c.f. <u>isbeerti</u> above, <u>xeeldheere</u> 20.4.3. and <u>agoonyahan</u> 20.4.5. below)
Kombiyuutar	n.m.II	computer
Macaash < معاش [ma'āsh] (Ar.)	n.m.II	pension
Makaanig	n.m.II	mechanic
Mushaar < مشهار [mashihār] (Ar.)	n.m.II	wages, salary
Shifti	n.m.II	shift
Shoobero < sciopero (It.)	n.f.IV	strike (c.f. <u>shaqojoojin</u> , 20.4.3., and <u>hawldiid</u> , 20.4.5. below)



### 20.3. Derivation

#### 20.3.1. Derivation involving semantic shift

Agaasine	n.m.VI	manager, director
agaasin	n.m.II	management (see 20.1. above)
n > m	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(viii)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

#### 20.3.2. Simple derivation

Burburiye	n.m.VI	bulldozer (c.f. <u>cirfiidad</u> , 20.1. and <u>baldoos</u> , 20.2. above)
burbur	v.r.	be wrecked (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Sahamiye	n.m.VI	surveyor
sahan	n.m.II	survey (see 5.1. above)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.3.
> sahami		
n > m	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4. (viii)
-y-		junction consonant
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Tababarle	n.m.VI	apprentice, trainee
tababar	n.m.II	training
-le	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Tartame	n.m.VI	applicant
tartan	n.m.II	competition (see 5.1. above)
n > m	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(viii)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

### 20.4. Compounds

#### 20.4.1. Compound involving semantic shift

Farsamoyaqaan	n.m.II	technician
farsamo	n.f.IV	technology (see 5.1. above)
yaqaan	n.aff.	see App. V, 2

#### 20.4.2. Compounds involving borrowing

Korontoyaqaan	n.m.II	electrician
koronto	n.f.IV	electricity (see 14.2. above)
yaqaan	n.aff.	see App. V, 2
Makiinadqore	n.m.VI	typist
makiinad	n.f.III	machine (see 5.2. above)
qor	v.r.	write (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

#### 20.4.3. Compounds involving derivation

Shaqogacmeed	n.m.II	manpower (c.f. <u>mano d'opera</u> (It.))
shaqo	n.f.IV	work
gacan	n.f.III	hand
> gacm		
n > m	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(viii)
(a)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
-eed	gen.aff.	see App. VIII, 3(b)
Shaqojoojin	n.f.III	strike (c.f. <u>shoobero</u> , 20.2. above and <u>hawdiid</u> , 20.4.5. below)
shaqo	n.f.IV	see above
jooq	v.r.	remain (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-i	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.3.(b)
> jooji		
g > j	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(v)
-n	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

Shaqoyaraan	n.f.III	under-employment
shaqo	n.f.IV	see above
yar	r.adj.	small (see Note 54)
-aan	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Xeeldheere	n.m.VI	expert (c.f. <u>isbeerti</u> and <u>khabiir</u> , 20.2. above and <u>aqoonyahan</u> , 20.4.5. below)
xeel	n.f.III	experience
dheer	r.adj.	long (see Note 54)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1

20.4.4. Compounds involving borrowings and derivation

Baldooswade	n.m.VI	bulldozer driver
baldoos	n.m.II	bulldozer (see 20.2. above)
wad	v.r.	drive, lead (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-e	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
Iskafatoorwade	n.m.VI	excavator driver
iskafatoor	n.m.II	excavator (see 20.2. above)
wade	n.m. VI	see above

20.4.5. Simple compounds

Abaalgud	n.m.II	bonus
abaal	n.m.II	reward
gud	v.aff.	deserve (see App. V, 3)
Aqoonyahan	n.m.II	expert (c.f. <u>aqoonyahan</u> , 7.4.2. above; also <u>isbeerti</u> and <u>khabiir</u> , 20.2. above and <u>xeeldheere</u> , 20.4.3. above)
aqoon	n.f.III	knowledge
yahan	n.aff.	see App. V, 2

Dhuumoyayaan	n.m.II	plumber
dhuumo	n.m.pl.III	pipes
yaqaan	n.aff.	see App. V, 2
Hawldiid	n.m.II	strike (c.f. <u>shoobero</u> , 20.2. and <u>shaqojoojin</u> , 20.4.3. above)
hawl	n.f.III	work
diid	v.aff.	refuse (see App. V, 3)
Hawlgab	n.m.II	retirement
hawl	n.f.III	see above
gab	v.aff.	become incapacitated (see App. V, 3)
Isarag	n.m.II	interview
is	ref.pr.	one another
arag	v.aff.	see (see App. V, 3)
Naqshadyaqaan	n.m.II	draughtsman
naqshad	n.f.III	pattern
yaqaan	n.aff.	see App. V, 2
Nololwarran	n.m.II	curriculum vitae
nolol	n.f.III	life
warran	v.aff.	inform (see App. V, 3)
war	n.m.I	news
-an	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.1.
Qofkawarran	n.m.II	curriculum vitae
qof	n.m.I	person
ka	pr.part.	from (see App. IX, 1.1. and 2.1.)
warran	v.r. + ext.	see above

Shaqola'aan	n.f.III	unemployment
shaqo	n.f.IV	work
la'aan	n.aff.	see App. V, 2

20.5. Phrase Groups

Dhar shaqaale		overalls
dhar	n.m.I	clothes
shaqaale	n.m.VI	worker
Dheeraadka shaqaynta		overtime
dheeraad	n.m.II	surplus
dheer	r.adj.	long (see Note 54)
-aad	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-ka	d.a.m.	
shaqayn	n.f.III	working
shaqo	n.f.IV	work
-ee	v.ext.	see App. IV, 2.1.2.
(o)	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(iv)
-ayn	der.aff.	see App. V, 1
-ta	d.a.f.	
Mushaar duuban		gross pay
mushaar	n.m.II	wages, salary (see 20.2. above)
duuban	v.adj.	gathered together (see Note 52)
duub	v.r.	round up sheep (see App. IV, 1.1.)
-an	v.ext.	see App. IV, 1.2.2.(a)
Mushaar saafi ah		net pay
mushaar	n.m.II	see above
saafi	n.m.II	cleanliness
ah	rel.cls.	which is (see App. VI, 3)

Shaqo marmar ah		casual employment
shaqo	n.f.IV	work
marmar	n.m.II	continual travelling
ah	rel.cls.	which is (see App. III, 3)
Ururka shaqaalaha		trade union
urur	n.m.II	union (see 20.1. above)
-ka	d.a.m.	
shaqaale	n.m.VI	worker
e > a	ph.alt.	see App. I, 1.4.(1)
-ha	d.a.m.	

PART III

EXAMPLES OF VOCABULARY EXPANSION IN SELECTED EXTRACTS FROM NEWS

BULLETINS BROADCAST BY RADIO MARGEISA, AUGUST-OCTOBER, 1954

Reference has already been made to the important role played by radio in the modernisation of Somali vocabulary. Its introduction in 1943 necessarily led to a vocabulary expansion, albeit on a limited and informal scale, in an attempt to bring international news to an avid listening public suddenly aware that international politics and events could affect their lives. It is this language of radio journalism which now forms the basis of the new language of the press. Between 1943 and 1960, the year in which Somalia gained her independence, it had been the custom for all radio stations operating in the Somaliland Protectorate to translate foreign news bulletins firstly into English and then orally into Somali - since at that time there existed no official orthography - after which the broadcaster was allowed a short period to rehearse the unwritten news item before going on the air.

In 1950-51 a research programme was undertaken by the Department of Education at Sheikh to create an orthography employing Latin script, and its findings were submitted to the Government in 1952, but due to strong opposition from those in favour of an Arabic script, the Department's recommendations were never implemented.

However, in 1954, a slightly modified form of this orthography was used in an experiment at Radio Hargeisa in an attempt to facilitate the task of the broadcaster by providing a means of translating foreign news items directly into written Somali. The distribution of these news bulletins was extremely restricted and the experiment lasted only

from August to October 1954, as a result, perhaps, of pressures from the above-mentioned opposition group. Fortunately, a few copies of these news bulletins still exist (21) and provide an excellent opportunity to see the extent to which the process of vocabulary expansion was developing by the early 1950's. In particular, a dependence upon borrowings is apparent at this time, which is not totally surprising given that the original news items were usually in English and had to be translated hurriedly into Somali.

What follows is a selection of six representative examples drawn from these news bulletins to demonstrate how certain neologisms and borrowings had become accepted and were used regularly some 18 years before the introduction of the official orthography - neologisms and borrowings which are still used today.

The six examples are reproduced here as they were written. There has been no attempt to correct any errors and it will be observed that the orthography employed differs in three respects from the official orthography introduced in 1972. The *q*, *h* and *'* used in these text represent the present *dh*, *x* and *c* (see Appendix I, 1.1.).

Although the number of news items is quite large, only six examples have been chosen since, due to the international and political nature of the items and the relatively short period of time which they cover, vocabulary and subject matter tend to recur frequently. Neologisms, borrowings and phrase groups occurring in each example will be identified by a bracketed number, with phrase groups being additionally underlined. A corresponding number will be found immediately following the example and alongside it will be the reference to the field of discourse in which the neologism, borrowing or phrase group is explained.

Where the 1954 orthography is at variance with that of the 1972, the modern spelling will be given in parenthesis after the reference to the word or phrase concerned in order to facilitate access to it in the appropriate field of discourse. Each example will then be followed by an English translation. Wherever possible, these examples have been translated literally in an attempt to show the precise meaning of the selected vocabulary.

#### EXAMPLE ONE

Dadka Indo-Nisiya shalayto ayay sagaal sannadood ugu buu'aday inti dowladnimada(1) haysteen, wa'ayna u ahayd Iidoodi sagalaad. Raisal wizaraha(2) Indo-nisiya aya Parlimankooda(3) ku yiqi, wa'nan idin sheegaya sababta ayno u diidnay inayno wa' ka galno wada hadalka(4) ku saabsan Gashaandiga(5) Asia geesteeda Ogo Bari.

17 August 1954

- (1) see 15.3.2. (under dawladnimo)
- (2) see 15.2. (under ra'iisul wasaare; seen here as a phrase group for the purpose of reference, it is considered in this work as a borrowing since it is taken directly from the Arabic رئيس الوزراء)
- (3) see 15.2. (under barlamaan; for -kooda, see App. VIII, 1)
- (4) see 15.4.4. (under wadahadal)
- (5) see 2.4.3. (under gaashaandhig)

Yesterday the people of Indonesia celebrated the ninth year of their independent statehood. The Prime Minister of Indonesia, addressing Parliament, said that he would explain why they had refused to take part in the discussions concerning the defence of South-East Asia.

#### EXAMPLE TWO

Wafdig(1) Hindia ka tirsan de'qo'aaadnimadi(2) heshiiski Indo-Chine iyo inti u shaqqayn lahayd ayaa Malay delhi ka ambaba'ay. intanay Delhi ka bixin na dammantood wa'ay u yimaadeen Mr. Nehru o raisal-wisaraha(3) Hindia ah, o khudbad(4) u akhriyay.

18 August 1954

- (1) see 15.2.
- (2) see 15.3.3. (under dhexdhexaadnimo)
- (3) see 15.2. (see note 2 of preceding example)
- (4) see 15.2.

The Indian delegation involved in the Indo-China mediation agreement and its staff left Delhi yesterday. Before they left, they all went to see Mr. Nehru, the Indian Prime Minister, who delivered a speech to them.

#### EXAMPLE THREE

Radiyowga(1) Hindia wa'a naga so gaaday, in magalada Lagos la yiqaahdo e arliga Nigeria ugu weyn meel 140 mile u jirta inay ku dinteen lix qof 23 ay ku qaaw'meen shalayto, kolki rabshadi ka de'qo' day laba xisbi(2) o ku wa siyassada(3) ah.

7 September 1954

- (1) see 6.2. (under radiyow)
- (2) see 15.2. (under xisbi)
- (3) see 15.2. (under siyaasad)

We have learnt from Radio India that six people died and 23 were injured yesterday when trouble broke out between two political parties at a place 140 miles from the Nigerian capital, Lagos.

EXAMPLE FOUR

Guddi-da(1) farsamada(2) Qunbula(3) Durriyaha(4) u qaybsa e Mareykan ninka gudoomiyaha u ah aya Washington gudeheeda ka yiqi, wa~~xa~~ no so wada hadalnay ninka mada~~da~~ u ah wi~~xi~~ ku saabsan farsamada Qunbula Durriyaha Canada. Wu~~xu~~ yiqi wa~~xu~~anu ka wada hadalnay si ay dowlada(5) Canada iyo Dowlada Mureykan ay ga'an isu siiyaan ku saabsan oqoonta Qunbula Durriyaha, Wu~~xu~~ kalo yiqi, wa~~x~~ la filaya in hubka kol dambe lagu tijaabiyo bada pacific la yid~~aa~~hdo e Mureykanka iyo Australia u da~~h~~aysa.

10 September 1954

- (1) see 15.1.
- (2) see 5.1. (under farsamo)
- (3) see 2.2. (under qunbulad)
- (4) see 2.5.
- (5) see 15.2. (under dawlad)

The Chairman of the United States Technical Committee on the Atomic Bomb announced in Washington that he had had talks with the Canadian head of research into the technology of the Atomic Bomb. He said that they had discussed ways in which the Canadian and United States Governments could assist one another in obtaining knowledge on the Atomic Bomb. He also commented that it was expected that the weapon would be tested in the Pacific Ocean, which lies between the United States and Australia.

EXAMPLE FIVE

Dayuradihi(1) Shiinaha Wadaniinta(2) aha aya kol dambe weeraray ayarluga Shiinaha Shu'iinta(3) ah meelaho ay 'idan(4) u fa~~q~~iyay. dayuradaha na aw~~xa~~ weheliyay Minawaaro(5) iyo madafii'di(6) o lagagi so ridayay Quemoy, dayuradahasi wa~~x~~ay bam(7) la da'een gaziirada(8) Amoy la yid~~aa~~hdo e ay haystaan Shiinaha Shu'iint ah.

13 September 1954

- (1) see 2.2. (under dayuurad)
- (2) see 2.5. (under waddaniyiinta in ciidawada waddaniyiinta)
- (3) see 15.2. (under shuuci)
- (4) see 2.1. (under ciidan)
- (5) see 2.2. (under miinawaar)
- (6) see 2.2. (under madaafic)
- (7) see 2.2.
- (8) see 8.2. (under jasiirad)

Chinese nationalist aircraft again attacked places in Communist China where troops were located. The aircraft, supported by warships and artillery which bombarded Quemoy, dropped bombs on the island of Amoy held by the Communist Chinese.

EXAMPLE SIX

'iidankii(1) amaanka(2) ee Kenya wa'ay ba'ayaan 'ol argigi'isadii(3)  
Mau Mau-da ah oo u soo qa'ay kinniisad Nairobi agteeda ah.Wa'ana la  
sheegay inay dileen nin afrikan ahaa oo kinniisada wa' ka wa'diyi  
jiray, sade' kalo afrikan ah na ay afdoob teen. Todobaadkii  
qamaaday na 'iidankaa amaanku wa'ay dileen 18 lagu waday inay  
Mau Mau ahaayeen laba na way ka qabteen.

18 October 1954

- (1) see 2.1. (under ciidan)
- (2) see 2.5. (under ciidamada ammaanka)
- (3) see 15.3.3. (under argaggaxiso)

Kenyan security forces are looking for a group of Mau-Mau terrorists who attacked a church close to Nairobi. It was reported that they killed an African who used to preach in the church and abducted three other Africans. Last week security forces killed 18 people believed to be members of Mau-Mau and captured two.

PART IV

THE ROLE OF THE SOMALI DAILY NEWSPAPER 'XIDDIGTA OKTOOBAR' IN THE  
MODERNISATION OF SOMALI VOCABULARY

In a language with a recently acquired orthography, the expansion of its social functions is accelerated through the mass media. In the case of Somali, both the radio and the newspaper have had an important role to play in the dissemination of vocabulary. Somali radio, begun in the early 1940's, had set the stage, and by the time that the Somali daily newspaper, Xiddigta Oktoobar, first appeared, a modern standard Somali vocabulary was already established, facilitating the task of putting the spoken word into print. However, the leading part played by Somali Radio for so long in the introduction of new vocabulary was now taken over by the newspaper, for the written word exerted more influence than the spoken and served as a source of reference, although the two media, both controlled by the same Ministry, still continued to complement one another.

The Somalis were quick to realise the importance of the press in the dissemination of new words, due to the written form and the wide distribution of the newspaper. The newspaper became a teaching vehicle as well as a source of news. Hence, the question of presentation of new words was considered very carefully. Borrowings posed less of a problem since written communications between Somalis prior to 1972 had been in Arabic, English or Italian, the three principal sources of such words. On the other hand, there was a certain reluctance to make use of borrowings, because, for the Somalis, to do so might indicate to the outsider, however erroneously, a certain inadequacy in their language. Naturally, there is a preference for the use of the native Somali word and usually its meaning is immediately transparent, but to insert certain words in a newspaper article involves

close attention to the context in which it appears. For context to determine meaning, it is vital that the other words in the sentence explain the new word without ambiguity. This is not always possible. Context is an amalgam of interdependent words and its use must necessarily assume that all these words are understood by the reader. If they are not, then the meaning of the new word is usually lost. However, there are two methods of overcoming ambiguity and incomprehensibility, both used extensively in the Somali press. The first involves new words which are likely to recur; in these cases it is possible to insert the word even in ambiguous contexts because the reader will come across them so often that the meanings will become clear. The second method is to insert alongside the new word the Arabic, English or Italian equivalent and is usually employed in the case of words which are unlikely to appear frequently and whose meaning may not be apparent from the context.

Wherever possible, it is left to the reader to determine the meaning of new words from context. Such a method of dissemination has two important aims: firstly, it promotes the idea of self-reliance essential for progress in a developing nation, and a principal motive behind the use of indigenous lexical resources; and secondly, if the reader is able to discover the meaning of a new term for himself, then the word is firmly implanted in his mind.

Having discussed the various methods by which the Somali press introduces new words to its readers, it is appropriate now to consider particular examples of phrases and sentences taken from Xiddigta Oktoobar containing vocabulary in the form of semantic shift, borrowings, derivation, compounds and phrase groups.

It would be misleading here to attempt to isolate one type of neologism from another contained within a single extract. All

neologisms exist side by side. Therefore, it has been decided not to identify the various types of word formation under individual headings, but simply to indicate each neologism, borrowing or phrase group as it appears in the examples, with a bracketed number beside it. A corresponding list of figures immediately follows the extract, and new vocabulary is identified by reference to the field of discourse in which it is explained. Phrase groups are underlined to avoid confusion, and reference is made chronologically to the particular issue of the newspaper from which the extract was taken, indicating date and page number. Each extract is followed by an English translation and as in the preceding part, all the examples have been translated literally, wherever possible, to demonstrate the precise meaning of the selected vocabulary.



EXAMPLE ONE

Xiddigta Oktoobar waa wargeys(1) maalin walba ka soo baxa Wasaaradda(2) Warfaafinta(3) iyo Hanuuninta Ummadda ee Jamhuuriyadda(4) Dimoqraadiga(5) ee Soomaaliya.

12 November 1975  
Page 1

- (1) see 16.4.1.
- (2) see 15.2.
- (3) see 6.4.2.
- (4) see 15.2.
- (5) see 15.2.

The October Star is a newspaper issued daily by the Ministry of Information and National Guidance of the Somali Democratic Republic.

EXAMPLE TWO

Gobolka(1) Shabeellaha Hoose wuxuu dhaqaalihiiisu(2) ku dhisan yahay beeraha(3) tacabkooda(4), xoolaha mool, kalluumaysiga iyo ganacsiga(5).

19 November 1975  
Page 6

- (1) see 15.1.
- (2) see 3.1. (for -iisu, see App. VIII, 1)
- (3) see 1.1. (under beero)
- (4) see 3.1. (for -kooda, see App. VIII, 1.)
- (5) see 3.3.2.

The economy of the Lower Shabele Region is built on agriculture, livestock, fishing and trade.

EXAMPLE THREE

Madaxweynaha(1) GSK Jaalle(2) Sarreeye(3)-Gaas(4) Maxamed Siyaad Barre, wuxuu aammanay ciidamada(5) qalabka sida(6) ee Yaman iyo guulaha ay gaartay Jamhuuriyadda(7) Carabta ee Yaman dhinaca horumarinta(8) iyo midnimada(9) Qaranka iyada oo uu hoggaaminayo Gaashaanle(10) Dhexe(11) Ibraahim Maxamed Al-Xaudi.

31 March 1976  
Page 6

- (1) see 15.4.3.
- (2) see 15.1.
- (3) see 2.3.3.
- (4) see 2.5.
- (5) see 2.1. (plural form of ciidan)
- (6) see 2.5.
- (7) see 15.2.
- (8) see 15.4.3.
- (9) see 15.3.3.
- (10) see 2.3.3.
- (11) see 2.5.

The President of the Supreme Revolutionary Council, Comrade Major-General Maxamed Siyaad Barre, praised the Yemeni Armed Forces and the successes achieved by the Yemen Arab Republic in the progress and unity of the nation under the leadership of Lieutenant-Colonel Ibrahima Mahamed Al-Haudi.

EXAMPLE FOUR

Waxaan halkan ku soo koobeeynaa baarista(1) taariikhda(2) iyo heerarkii ay ka soo gudbeen, innagoo u kaashaneyno cilmiga(3) baarista afafka(4) (filologia).

21 September 1977  
Page 4

- (1) see 7.3.1.
- (2) see 7.2.
- (3) see 7.2.
- (4) see 9.5.

We summarize here the study of history and the stages of development, making use of philology (lit. the science of the study of languages).

EXAMPLE FIVE

Siday caadadu tahay sannad kasta dhammaadkiisa waxa laga rabaa Maamulayaasha(1) Dugsiyada(2) inay u soo gudbiyaan Guddoonka(3) Waxbarashada(4) warbixin(5) buuxda oo tilmaameysa guulihii laga gaaray waxbarashada, dhibaatooyinkii lagala kulmay, wixii fuli waayey, iyadoo fiiro gaar ah la siinayo qodobbadan (6).

24 September 1977  
Page 6

- (1) see 15.3.1. (plural form of maamule)
- (2) see 7.1. (plural form of dugsi)
- (3) see 15.1.
- (4) see 7.4.1.
- (5) see 6.4.2.
- (6) see 9.1. (plural form of qodob; for -an, see App. II, Note)

As is customary at the end of each year, the School Administrators are required to forward to the Education Directorate a full report detailing the results achieved, the problems encountered and any shortcomings, paying particular attention to the following points:

EXAMPLE SIX

Shirkaas oo ay ka soo qayb galeen xeeldheerayaal(1) Ururkaas(2) Yunesko ka tirsani waxa ka mid ahaa arrimihii lagu soo bandhigay sidii sayniska(3) looga xoreyn lahaa monobooliga(4) uu ugu jiro dawladdo(5) tiro yar oo ah kuwa ku hore maray teknooloojiyada(6).

5 April 1978  
Page 5

- (1) see 20.4.3. (plural form of xeeldheere)
- (2) see 15.1. (for -kaas, see App. II, Note)
- (3) see 7.2.
- (4) see 5.2.
- (5) see 15.2. (plural form of dawlad)
- (6) see 5.3.2.

Among the matters raised at this meeting, in which experts from UNESCO participated, was how to wrest the monopoly of science from the small number of governments which have reached an advanced stage of technology.

EXAMPLE SEVEN

Waxaan hubnaa in dadyowga ku nool Afrika iyo Bariga Dhexe ay xoojin doonaan midnimadooda(1) iyo feejignaantooda si ay uga hor tagaan isla weynaanta(2) quwadaha shisheeyaha ugana guuleystaan imberiyaaliyadda(3), gumaysiga(4) midabtakoor(5) sahyuuniyadda(6) guul kama dambeys ahna uga gaaraan himiladooda la xiriirta xoraynta(7) dadyowga weli ku haray gacanta gumaysiga ee Afrika iyo Bariga Dhexe, ayey tiri Jaalle(8) Chen.

2 August 1978  
Page 8

- (1) see 15.3.3. (for -dooda, see App. VIII, 1.)
- (2) see 15.4.3. (under islaweynaa)
- (3) see 15.3.2.
- (4) see 15.3.3.
- (5) see 15.4.4.
- (6) see 15.3.2.
- (7) see 15.3.3.
- (8) see 15.1.

We are certain that the people of Africa and the Middle East will strengthen their unity and awareness to prevent the expansionism of foreign powers, to overcome once and for all imperialism, colonialism, apartheid, Zionism and to support the liberation of those people still bearing the yoke of colonialism in Africa and the Middle East, said Comrade Chen.

EXAMPLE EIGHT

Xoghayaha(1) Guud(2) ee XHKS, Madaxweynaha(3) JDS, Jaalle(4) Maxamed Siyaad Barre, wuxuu shalay Xarunta(5) Madaxtooyada(6) kaga guddoomay wargadihii(7) agoonsiga(8) danjiraha(9) cusub ee dawladda(10) Switzerland wakiilka(11) uga noqon doona Soomaaliya Mudane Paul E. Jaccaud.

25 November 1978  
Page 1

- (1) see 15.4.4
- (2) see 15.5.
- (3) see 15.4.3.
- (4) see 15.1.
- (5) see 7.1.
- (6) see 15.4.4
- (7) see 5.2. (plural form of wargad)
- (8) see 15.5
- (9) see 15.4.3.
- (10) see 15.2.
- (11) see 5.2

Yesterday, in the office of the Presidency, the Secretary-General of the Somali Socialist Revolutionary Party, President of the Somali Democratic Republic, Comrade Maxamed Siyaad Barre, accepted the letters of credence of the new Swiss Ambassador to Somalia, His Excellency Paul E. Jaccaud.

EXAMPLE NINE

Waxaa la ogeysiinayaa tartamayaashii(1) araajida(2) u soo qortay jagooyinkii(3) telefooniistenimada(4) ee ka bahnaanaa Wasaaradda(5) Boostada(6) iyo Isgaarsiinta(7) inay si deg deg ah u yimaadaan Xafiiska(8) Shaqada Degmooyinka(9) Xamar ee ku yaal Gegida K. Cagta Banaadir dhexdeeda maalinta ay taariikhdu tahay 8.8.79 saacadduna tahay 8.00 subaxnimo halkaasoo loogu sheegi doono arrimo iyaga la xiriira.

8 August 1979  
Page 6

- (1) see 20.3.2. (plural form of tartame)
- (2) see 20.2. (plural form of arji)
- (3) see 20.1. (plural form of jago)
- (4) see 6.3.1.
- (5) see 15.2.
- (6) see 6.2.
- (7) see 6.4.2. (under warisgaarsiin)
- (8) see 13.2.
- (9) see 15.1. (plural form of degmo)

The candidates who applied in writing for the posts of telephonist currently vacant in the Ministry of Posts and Communications are notified that at 8 a.m. on 8.8.79 they should go immediately to the Mogadishu District Employment Office situated at the Banaadir Football Stadium where they will receive information concerning these vacancies.

EXAMPLE TEN

Laba gujis(1) amaba marakiibta(2) quusa biyaha hoostooda(3) oo sida gantaallada(4) nukliyeerka(5) oo ay leedahay dawladda(6) Mareykanka ayaa la sheegay in hubka laga dhigi doono sannadka soo socda sidaana waxaa ku warramay sarkaal(7) ka tirsan ciidamada(8) badda(9) ee dalka Mareykanka dorraad.

27 February 1980  
Page 2

- (1) see 2.3.3.
- (2) see 2.2 (plural form of markab)
- (3) see 2.5.
- (4) see 2.1. (plural form of gantaal)
- (5) see 2.5.
- (6) see 15.2.
- (7) see 2.2.
- (8) see 2.1. (plural form of ciidan)
- (9) see 2.5. (under ciidanka badda)

A U.S. Navy official reported the day before yesterday that the nuclear missiles carried by two submarines, or ships which dive under the water, are to be removed next year.

PART V

THE ROLE OF THE SCHOOL TEXT-BOOK IN THE MODERNISATION

OF SOMALI VOCABULARY

In Part IV I have tried to show the important role played by the Somali press in the dissemination of the new vocabulary. However, this role should not be seen in isolation. While Xiddigta Oktoobar was being used initially as a teaching vehicle to provide a simple introduction for Somalis beyond school-age to new topics such as science and economics - subjects which could never have been discussed without an expanded vocabulary - action was being, and continues to be taken by the Ministry of Education's Curriculum Department to produce and publish a series of school text-books in the Somali language on a wide range of subjects, designed specifically for the current and future generations of Somali schoolchildren, for it seems to be a widely held belief among Somali educationalists that children will learn more quickly and more willingly in their native language. To date, the large number of school books already produced covers the whole of pre-university education in Somalia. Through the production of these books, it has been possible to demonstrate the full capabilities of the language without resorting unnecessarily to the methods of translation and paraphrase found in Xiddigta Oktoobar. There is little attempt made to provide Arabic, English or Italian equivalents in the texts to explain the newly-introduced Somali word since they would mean very little to young Somali children born after the Revolution. (Arabic and English are taught extensively in Somalia, but only at secondary school level). For the children themselves, there is nothing odd about these new words. They have grown up with them and accept them. An incidental

advantage of this is that children now can and will discuss their schoolwork with their parents, thereby stimulating among adults an interest in both language and subject matter. Unlike that adopted by the Somali press, the presentation of new vocabulary has, necessarily, to be different. It is essential that children in the same class discover and understand the new vocabulary at the same time. Therefore, it is not possible to depend upon the recurrence of particular words for their meaning to become clear. While this may be adequate for vocabulary appearing in the press, it is not acceptable in the school text-book. Nor is it possible to place in context opaque words relating to such subjects as mathematics, chemistry and physics. They are so specialised that context cannot usually provide their meaning. Hence, the onus is upon teachers to explain the new words contained in the children's school books. They are assisted in this task by the great use made of illustrations in these books and of examples which are often drawn from both town and rural life and within the experience of the pupils. The examples which follow are taken from five school text-books dealing with geography, grammar, history, mathematics and science. Following the method adopted for the extracts from Xiddigta Oktoobar in the preceeding part, each neologism, borrowing or phrase group will be indicated by a bracketed number to be found in a corresponding list immediately after the extract, which in turn will refer to the field of discourse in which the word is explained. Likewise, a literal English translation will follow each extract.

EXAMPLE ONE

Haddii aad fiiriso goloobka(1) waxaad arki doontaa xariiqo ku yaal oo isdhaafdhaafsan. Qaarkood waxay ka bilaabmaan cirifka(2) Waqooyi ee adduunka waxayna ku dhammaadaan cirifka koonfureed ee adduunka. Kuwa kalena si gudban ayey ugu wareegsan yihiin dhulka, iyagoo galbeed intay bilaabmaan bari u socda. Kuwa hore waxa la yiraahdaa Dhigo(3), kuwa dambena waxa la yiraahdaa Lool(4).

Juqraafi, Fasalka Shanaad  
Page 7

- (1) see 8.2.
- (2) see 8.1. (under cidhif; r may replace medial dh)
- (3) see 8.4. (under xarriiqaha dhigaha)
- (4) see 8.4. (under xarriiqaha loolka)

If you consider the globe, you will see a series of lines criss-crossing one another. Some begin at the earth's North Pole and end at the earth's South Pole. Others cut across the earth going from west to east. The former are called lines of longitude and the latter, lines of latitude.

EXAMPLE TWO

Barashada Af Soomaaliga iyo xeerkiisu, waxay leeyihiin dhawaaqyo(1) iyo astaamo(2) ku saabsan isaga. Dhawaaqa, waxaa lagu aqoonsadaa summado(3). Barashada Afkana waxaa la yiraahdaa amaba lagu magacaabaa fonoolojiya(4); barashada summaddana waxaa lagu magacaaba qoraalka (ortografiyada(5)).

Naxwaha Af Soomaaliga  
Page 3

- (1) see 9.1. (plural form of dhawaaq)
- (2) see 9.1. (plural form of astaan)
- (3) see 4.1. (plural form of summado)
- (4) see 9.2.
- (5) see 9.2.

The study of the Somali language and its rules includes pronunciation and punctuation. Pronunciation is recognised by symbols. The study of the language is called or termed phonology and the study of the symbols is called orthography.

EXAMPLE THREE

Dadkii Somalida ahaa ee niyaddiisa hore loo dilayna waxaa lagu beeray waxwadaqabsi(1) iyo iskukalsoonaan(2). Dadkii wuxuu ka kacay dhismo, dugsiyo(3), isbitaal(4), beero(5) iyo hawlo badan oo kala jaad ah ee lagu sameeyayna "iskawaxuqabso"(6).

Buugga Taariikhda  
Page 36

(1) see 15.4.3.

(2) see 15.4.3.

(3) see 7.1. (plural form of dugsi)

(4) see 12.2. (plural form of isbitaal)

(5) see 1.1

(6) see 15.4.3.

The Somali people who were previously demoralised were now inspired to practice co-operative farming and self-sufficiency. The people built houses, schools and hospitals, took up agriculture and carried out a variety of other tasks in the name of "self-help".

EXAMPLE FOUR

Goobo waa gobol sallax(1) ka mid ah, oo ku dhex jira xarriiq baraaheedu in isle'eg u wada jiraan bar maguuraan ah oo isla sallax ku taal oo lagu magacaabo xuddunta(2) goobada. Xarriiqda xoodan waxa la yiraa meeris(3). Xarriiqda meeriska iyo xuddunta isku xirta waxa lagu magacaabaa gacan(4). Xarriiqda laba barood oo meeriska ku yaal isku xirta iyadoo isla markaa xuddunta maraysa waxaa la yiraa dhexroor(5).

Xisaab, Fasalka Kowaad  
Page 70

(1) see 11.1.

(2) see 11.1.

(3) see 11.3.1.

(4) see 11.1.

(5) see 11.4.5.

A circle is a plane area in which every point is equidistant from the middle, which is called the centre of the circle. The curved line is called the circumference. The line joining the circumference and the centre is called the radius. The line joining two points on the circumference which passes through the centre is called the diameter.

EXAMPLE FIVE

Nafaqooyinka(1) cuntada ku jiraa waxay yihiin: Kaarbohaydareytka(2), duxda(3), borotiinka(4), macdanta iyo fiitamiinnada(5). Nafaqada ayuu tamarta(6) ka helno; Duxda iyo Kaarbohaydareytka waxay ka kooban yihiin curiyeaasha(7) Kaarbon (C)(8), Haydarojiin (H)(9) iyo Ogsajiin (O)(10).

Saynis, Fasalka Shanaad  
Page 126

- (1) see 12.1. (plural form of nafaqo)
- (2) see 12.2.
- (3) see 12.1.
- (4) see 12.2.
- (5) see 12.2. (plural form of fiitamiin)
- (6) see 14.1.
- (7) see 4.3.1. (plural form of curiye)
- (8) see 4.2.
- (9) see 4.2.
- (10) see 4.2.

The nutrients contained in food are: carbohydrates, fats, protein, minerals and vitamins. The nutrients provide energy: the fats and carbohydrates include the elements carbon (C), hydrogen (H) and oxygen (O).

PART VI

CONCLUSIONS

The aim of this study has been to examine the lexical modernisation of the Somali language by considering it as a specific manifestation of a universal phenomenon. It has been demonstrated that:

- (a) language modernisation occurs on a universal level, but follows different paths and may be gradual or accelerated (the specific case of Somali is an example of the degree of acceleration possible)
- (b) the methods of vocabulary expansion are limited
- (c) within the limits of the universal phenomenon there exists a freedom of choice, and the Somali choices have been determined by the various factors described above.

The general trends in Somali vocabulary enrichment have been examined and explained in the fields of discourse contained in Part II, and in the selected extracts taken from the Somali daily newspaper Xiddigta Oktoobar and the various school text-books to be found in Parts IV and V. The five methods employed - semantic shift, borrowing, derivation, compounding and phrase grouping - may be found singly or collectively in all the fields of discourse considered above, and it is interesting to note the frequency with which one or more of these methods occur in particular areas. However, it must be remembered that the process of modernisation and standardisation of the language is still continuing. Even the new vocabulary used in current school text-books may be subject to change in subsequent editions as a result of the reports of the Ministry of Education's school inspectors who maintain close liaison with teachers and seek their views and comments on newly-introduced words. With new words constantly entering Somali both officially and unofficially - the "unofficial"



words generally being arbitrarily adopted foreign borrowings - it is not unusual for there to exist more than one word for a new or alien concept or object, e.g. gujis (2.3.3.) and markabka quusa biyaha hoos-tooda (2.5.); raasammaal (3.2.) and xoolamada (3.4.5.); waxsoosaarid (5.4.3.) and tacabdhah (5.4.5.); heer (15.1.) and dabagad (15.2.); and jalexad (19.1.) and radiyeetar (19.2.). Consequently, until a single standard form has been adopted, it would be premature to try and draw any definite conclusions through a correlation of the fields of discourse and the methods of vocabulary expansion. In view of the current state of flux, it is only possible to give a tentative outline of trends.

The Somali approach to vocabulary expansion has been a moderate one. It has been realised that in those fields of discourse which contain words likely to occur in everyday speech preference should be given to indigenous vocabulary, whether involving semantic shift, derivation or compounding. The reasons for this are two-fold: firstly, to boost the national confidence by showing that the language is perfectly adequate to express modern concepts and describe new objects, thus curtailing the arbitrary use of borrowings from English, Italian or Arabic - determined usually by the speaker's linguistic or geographic background - which may not always be understood by Somalis from other parts of the country; and secondly, to ensure that such native words are accepted and remembered by making use of the vast lexical stock, thereby providing a mnemonic aid for the speaker. For these reasons, opaque words are generally avoided in such fields of discourse. With the emphasis upon transparency, not only is the speaker able to understand the new word - even if he has never seen it before - but in the case of semantic shift and derivation particularly, the same word may possess more than one meaning, e.g.

astaa (4.1., 9.1. and 12.1.); caddayn (5.3.3. and 10.3.1.); dhaqdhagaag (2.1. and 15.1.); jimicsi (7.1., 12.1. and 17.1.); and geexid (4.3.1. and 5.3.3.), and each meaning is usually immediately clear from the context.

However, the avoidance of opaque words is not taken to extremes. There is an awareness that borrowings have an important contribution to make, and the Somali policy is to use them in fields of discourse such as chemistry - the names of all the elements are borrowed from English - and medicine, where specialised words or vocabularies are involved. Since those people principally concerned with these fields tend to be specialists themselves there is little need to employ transparent words, especially if understanding is required at an international level. Curiously, in the field of physics, where an emphasis on borrowings might be expected, there is a tendency to resort to native terminology, due perhaps to the fact that physics is a branch of science concerned with natural phenomena and therefore the indigenous words describing them can be employed. Likewise, mathematics appears to derive most of its terminology from the native lexical stock, a fact which certainly facilitates the task of teaching and learning such a subject.

Methods of vocabulary expansion generally seem to be determined by the field of discourse: commercial, financial, military, technological and certain scientific subjects naturally attract borrowings or phrase groups (including calques); subjects reflecting or affecting the new Somali society, such as education, language, politics and work appear to draw on vocabulary from the rich lexical reserves of the language; and finally, certain areas like agriculture and law appear to be relatively unaffected by this programme of vocabulary expansion since the traditional vocabulary is adequate to meet modern requirements.

The success of the Somali experiment is due entirely to the boldness, determination and dedication of the present Somali Government which, despite the many economic and political problems besetting the nation, has given priority to this policy of lexical reform. Their reason for undertaking such a task lies in the importance which all Somalis attach to their language. By making Somali the national language, the Government sought to unify the country, for they realised that to ensure political and economic development, education was vital and had to be made available to all. The only way to achieve this was through the introduction of an official orthography and a co-ordinated programme of vocabulary expansion, whereby the language would be able to meet the demands made upon it by a modern world. Prior to 1972, all instruction in government schools had necessarily been in English, Italian, and, to a lesser extent, Arabic, and consequently Somalis had had no alternative but to learn one of these languages if they were to receive any education. The Government recognised the need for changes in the educational system, for the majority of the population possessed little or no knowledge of the colonial languages or Arabic, and saw the existence of an elite educated through a foreign language, and thus separated from the mass of the population, as a threat to the type of society which they were trying to create.

By giving the nation its own written language and by seeking to reduce dependence upon foreign languages in all sectors of public life, the Government was also expressing the Pan-African desire to demonstrate to the rest of the world that African nations are able to administer their own affairs, despite views to the contrary prevalent since colonial days, and it is precisely such national self-reliance and self-confidence which is manifested in the success of the Somali experiment.

Whether this achievement will influence other African countries is not altogether certain, particularly in view of the fact that while the vast majority of the population of Somalia speak Somali as their mother tongue, most other nations of the continent are multilingual societies. Nonetheless, the Somali experiment has shown quite clearly that, given the motivation and the will to succeed, it is possible to "modernise" a language within an extremely short period of time. The Somali has always been proud of his language, but perhaps never more so than now when, at last possessing an official orthography, he has seen and appreciated the flexibility of Somali in coping with even the most complex examples of modern thought and technology and has witnessed the speed with which this modernisation has been accomplished.

## APPENDIX I

### Brief Notes on Somali Orthography

The aim of these notes is to relate the system of transcription employed in the official Somali orthography to the sounds of the language, since this is of particular relevance to the study of loan-words, which play an important role in the process of modernising the vocabulary. At the same time, it will enable the reader unfamiliar with Somali to appreciate the problems involved in the adaptation of the Somali orthography.

The sounds which occur in Somali are listed below, and many of them will be found to correspond approximately with those of other languages. The majority of consonantal sounds are straightforward, the more difficult ones, as compared with English, being those also found in Arabic, namely x, kh, c, q, '. As for the Somali vowels, their pronunciation is complicated by the existence of twenty vowel sounds and eight diphthongs. These may be classified as front, back and central and as closed or open(22). The distinction between long and short vowels is extremely important in Somali in that the meaning of a particular word depends upon the length of the vowel contained within it.

For the purposes of this thesis, I have tried to simplify the phonology as much as possible and have therefore restricted myself to a description of the basic sounds, i.e. those which are directly involved in the differentiation of meaning. There will be no detailed analysis, for example, of the complicated vowel system, although reference will be to works in which further information on the subject may be found.

Finally, the sequence of Somali letters may follow the Latin or Arabic alphabet. Since I have chosen to consider consonants and vowels separately, the Arabic sequence is adopted here.

### 1.1. Consonants

In the list below each consonant is explained in terms of its phonetic description and its counterpart in the International Phonetic Alphabet.

Letter in Somali Orthography	Phonetic Description	IPA symbol
b	voiced labial plosive	b
t	unvoiced dental plosive	t
j	voiced or voiceless palato-alveolar affricate	tʃ
x	unvoiced pharyngeal fricative	ħ
kh	unvoiced velar fricative	x
d	voiced dental plosive	d
r	alveolar rolled lingual	r
s	unvoiced alveolar fricative	s
sh	unvoiced palato-alveolar fricative	ʃ
dh	voiced post-alveolar or retroflex plosive	ɖ
c	voiced pharyngeal fricative	ʕ
g	voiced velar plosive	ɡ
f	unvoiced labio-dental fricative	f
q	uvular plosive	q
k	unvoiced velar plosive	k
l	alveolar lateral non-fricative	l
m	labio-nasal	m
n	alveolar nasal	n
w	bilabial glide	w
y	palatal glide	j
ʔ	glottal stop	ʔ

### Notes:

- i. The letters p, v and z do not exist in Somali; in loanwords these letters are replaced by b, f and s respectively.
- ii. Voiced consonants having a final position in a word are only partially voiced.
- iii. The only consonants which can be doubled in Somali are b, d, dh, g, l, m, n, r.

### 1.2. Vowels

A list of the Somali vowels is given below:

short vowels    a, e, i, o, u

long vowels    aa, ee, ii, oo, uu

It should be noted that the Somali orthography possesses 5 short vowel quality distinctions and 5 correspondingly long ones, with the length being represented by the doubling of the letter. It also treats diphthongs as combinations of vowels and the vowel glides w and y.

The 5 quality distinctions of the Somali short vowels can be described, for the purposes of the present work, as being approximately those to be found within the ranges of the Italian vowels a, e, i, o, u. Within the same limits of approximation, the Somali long vowels can therefore be considered as merely lengthened equivalents of the corresponding short vowels.

#### Note:

This is an extreme simplification of the Somali vowel system. Pronunciation is, in fact, also dependent upon whether the vowel is fronted or retracted. The Somali orthography does not represent these further vowel distinctions which are relatively unimportant from the semantic point of view, having a mainly grammatical function, and consequently they are not considered here (23).

### 1.3. Table of Correspondence

In order to relate what has been said above concerning documentation on Common or Standard Somali (24) available in published works, the following table of correspondence is given. While not being exhaustive, it offers a general insight into the long-felt need for an official Somali orthography and the various attempts to achieve it. In the table below, the first column contains the official Somali orthography in accordance with the Arabic alphabetic sequence, with consonants first followed by the vowels; subsequent columns reflect the transcriptions of Somali sounds proposed by various Somali scholars. The transcriptions are arranged under the name of their proposer, in alphabetical order. In the case of Somali names, position is dependent upon the given (first) name, and the spelling of these names reflects the individual orthographic system proposed.

Official Sogali Ortho- graphy	Abdu- llahi Rhazi Mahmud and B. Panza (25)	B.W. Andrze- jewski (26)	L.E. Arm- strong (27)	C.R.V. Bell (28)	Ibrahim Hashi Mahmud (29)	M.M. Moreno (30)	Muhammad Abdi Makhlif (31)	Muuse Haaaji Ismaai- 'iil Galaal (32)	Muuse Haaaji Ismaai- 'iil Galaal (33)	Shire Jaama Achned (34)	Far Soonali (35)	Remarks
b	b	b	b	b	ب	ب	ب	ب	ب	b	ب	In all systems based upon the Latin alphabet, double consonantal sounds are indicated by a doubling of the consonant. In those systems based upon the Arabic alphabet, the doubling of consonants is indicated by (shadda).
t	t	t	t	t	ت	ت	ت	ت	ت	t	ت	
j	j	j	j	j	ج	ج	ج	ج	ج	j	ج	
x	hh	h	h	h	ح	ح	ح	ح	ح	ch	ح	
kh	kh	kh	x	kh	خ	خ	خ	خ	خ	kh	خ	
d	d	d	d	d	د	د	د	د	د	d	د	
r	r	r	r	r	ر	ر	ر	ر	ر	r	ر	
s	s	s	s	s	س	س	س	س	س	s	س	
sh	sh	sh	ʃ	sh	ش	ش	ش	ش	ش	sh	ش	
dh	dh	d	d	d	ط	ط	ط	ط	ط	dh	ط	
c	c	c	c	c	ع	ع	ع	ع	ع	c	ع	
g	g	g	g	g	غ	غ	غ	غ	غ	g	غ	
f	f	f	f	f	ف	ف	ف	ف	ف	f	ف	
q	q	q	q	q	ق	ق	ق	ق	ق	q	ق	
k	k	k	k	k	ك	ك	ك	ك	ك	k	ك	

Official Sogali Ortho- graphy	Abdu- llahi Rhazi Mahmud and B. Panza (25)	B.W. Andrze- jewski (26)	L.E. Arm- strong (27)	C.R.V. Bell (28)	Ibrahim Hashi Mahmud (29)	M.M. Moreno (30)	Muhammad Abdi Makhlif (31)	Muuse Haaaji Ismaai- 'iil Galaal (32)	Muuse Haaaji Ismaai- 'iil Galaal (33)	Shire Jaama Achned (34)	Far Soonali (35)	Remarks
i	i	i	i	i	ا	ا	ا	ا	ا	i	ا	A zap means that no equivalent exists in a particular system.
n	n	n	n	n	ن	ن	ن	ن	ن	n	ن	
n	n	n	n	n	ن	ن	ن	ن	ن	n	ن	
w	w	w	w	w	و	و	و	و	و	w	و	
h	h	h	h	h	ه	ه	ه	ه	ه	h	ه	
y	y	y	y	y	ي	ي	ي	ي	ي	y	ي	
,	,	,	,	,	،	،	،	،	،	,	،	
i	i	i	i	i	ا	ا	ا	ا	ا	i	ا	In the systems proposed by B.W. Andrzejewski and Muuse Haaaji Ismaai-'iil Galaal, the use of the cedilla, or its absence, is designed to represent certain distinctions in vowel harmony, indicating whether the vowel is fronted or retracted. However, such distinctions need no orthographic marking since the context in which they might occur would usually preclude any ambiguity.
e	e	e	e	e	ا	ا	ا	ا	ا	e	ا	
a	a	a	a	a	ا	ا	ا	ا	ا	a	ا	
o	o	o	o	o	ا	ا	ا	ا	ا	o	ا	
u	u	u	u	u	ا	ا	ا	ا	ا	u	ا	
ii	ii	ii	ii	ii	ا	ا	ا	ا	ا	ii	ا	
ee	ee	ee	ee	ee	ا	ا	ا	ا	ا	ee	ا	
aa	aa	aa	aa	aa	ا	ا	ا	ا	ا	aa	ا	
oo	oo	oo	oo	oo	ا	ا	ا	ا	ا	oo	ا	
uu	uu	uu	uu	uu	ا	ا	ا	ا	ا	uu	ا	

#### 1.4. Phonological Alternances

In order to explain some of the processes of derivation in Somali, it is necessary at times to take into account certain phonological alternances, but those which follow must not be regarded as being absolute, for they are context-sensitive(37). Among the most common are:

- (i) A final short -e and -o change to -a when additions are made to the word: e.g. waddo, road; waddada, the road.
- (ii) A short a is influenced by e or i in the succeeding syllable: e.g. tag, go; tegi, to go.
- (iii) A short vowel preceding x, c, q, h, or ', will take the same form as the vowel following the consonant; e.g. xoolo, livestock; xoolihii, the livestock (38).
- (iv) A final short vowel is omitted when additions are made to a word of two or more syllables if the last vowel of a root is not preceded by two consonants, a double consonant, k or w, and if the last and the penultimate consonants are identical: e.g. hadhiq, rope; hadhko, ropes.
- (v) When followed by a short i, g and q become j: e.g. xoog, strength; xooji, strengthen; baq, become afraid; baji, frighten. There are two instances when the combination -ow + i becomes -ooji. These occur with the verbs gabow, become old, and qabow, become cold.
- (vi) A g becomes k before t: e.g. arag, see; araktay, you saw. Furthermore, when the contraction mentioned in note iv occurs, a g will become k before a vowel: e.g. adag, hard; adkaa, it was hard.
- (vii) The combination of l and t usually becomes sh: e.g. ul, stick; usha, the stick (instead of ul-ta)(39).

- (viii) A final n may become m when, through additions to the basic form of the word, the n falls between two vowels: e.g. nin, man; niman, men
- (ix) A t becomes d after x, c, q, and h: e.g. baxdey, he went out (instead of baxtey).
- (x) A t becomes d after aw, ow, and i: e.g. illowdey, you forgot (instead of illowtey).
- (xi) An l or r followed by n becomes ll and rr respectively: e.g. dilley, we killed (instead of dilney).
- (xii) The letters m and b are often interchangeable: e.g. kibis or kimis, bread.
- (xiii) When followed by a vowel, aw and ow may become aab and oob respectively: e.g. illoobey, he forgot (instead of illowey).

### 1.5. Tone (40)

Somali is a tonal language but the functions of tone are limited to grammatical operations and do not produce lexical distinctions. The official orthography does not represent tone since it can be inferred from the syntactic context of each word or form, i.e. inan (with stress on first syllable), boy; inan (with stress on last syllable), girl.

<u>inan</u> baa ciyaaraya,	a boy is playing
<u>inan</u> baa ciyaaraysa,	a girl is playing.

### APPENDIX II

The information on Somali grammar provided in Appendices II- IX has two aims:

- a) to show how vocabulary items can be isolated when occurring as components of combinations of two or more words.
- b) to indicate how the derivational system functions.

The first type of information is important since in Somali combinations of words are frequently represented as single graphic words. Particularly common are combinations of nouns and definite, demonstrative and possessive adjectives. The Somali derivational system is especially productive in the verbal system, but nominalisations are also common.

#### The Definite Article

1. In Somali, the definite article is attached to the noun in the form of a suffix; without it, the noun remains indefinite. The basic suffixes are -ku / -ka / -kii and -tu / -ta / -tii for masculine and feminine nouns respectively, whether singular or plural (41). The -ku/-tu form is normally used, when referring to present time, to identify the subject noun in a sentence; the -ka/-ta form identifies the object noun; and the -kii/-tii form is employed for both subject and object in the past (42).

nin, man	ninku/ninka/ninkii, the man
naag, woman	naagtu/naagta/naagtii, the woman

The definite article forms -ku/-tu, -ka/-ta, can also be used when the noun to which they are suffixed denotes someone or something close to the speaker at the time of speaking or is imagined to be so, while -kii/-tii are used when the noun to which they are suffixed is in some way remote (physically or mentally) from the speaker.



However, these suffixes are subject to a consonant change when attached to nouns ending in a vowel or certain consonants.

## 2. Masculine suffix

2.1. When suffixed to a masculine noun ending in g, a, i, u, w, or y, the -ku/-ka/-kii will become -gu/-ga/-gii:

buug	book	buuggu	the book
dhurwaa	hyena	dhurwaaga	the hyena
dugsi	school	dugsigii	the school
gu	main rains	gugu	the main rains
awow	grandfather	awowga	the grandfather
rajay	orphan	rajaygii	the orphan

2.2. When suffixed to a masculine singular noun ending in -e or to a masculine plural noun ending in -o the -ku/-ka/-kii will become -hu/-ha/-hii. However, for reasons of vowel harmony, the final short vowel of the noun is assimilated by the vowel contained in the definite article suffix (43):

geeljire	camel-driver	geeljiruhu	the camel-driver
fure	key	furaha	the key
biyo	water	biyihii	the water

2.3. When suffixed to a noun ending in a guttural other than g (c, kh, q) or an aspirate (h, x), the -ku/-ka/-kii will become -u/-a/-ii:

dhinac	side	dhinacu	the side
sheekh	sheikh	sheekha	the shiekh
sanduuq	box	sanduuqii	the box
shaah	tea	shaahu	the tea
dayax	moon	dayaxa	the moon

## 3. Feminine Suffix

3.1. When suffixed to a feminine noun ending in a vowel (44), an aspirate, d, w, y, ' , or a guttural other than g, the -tu/-ta/-tii will become -du/-da/-dii:

ri	goat	ridu	the goat
maskax	brain	maskaxda	the brain
dawlad	government	dawladdii	the government
caw	palm tree	cawdu	the palm tree
rajay	orphan	rajayda	the orphan
lo'	cattle	lo'dii	the cattle
xarriiq	line	xarriiqdu	the line

3.2. When suffixed to a feminine noun ending in dh, the -tu/-ta/-tii will become -dhu/-dha/-dhii. However, Somali orthography requires only one dh although it must be pronounced as a double consonant:

gabadh	girl	gabadhu	the girl
--------	------	---------	----------

3.3. When suffixed to a feminine noun ending in l, the combination of l + -tu/-ta/-tii/ usually becomes -shu/-sha/-shii:

ul	stick	ushu	the stick
meel	place	meesha	the place
walaal	sister	walaashii	the sister

### Note:

Just as the definite article is expressed in Somali by the use of a suffix, so too is the demonstrative. The following suffixes, which are subject to the same phonological alternances as the definite article, are used for both singular and plural nouns:

#### a) Masculine

-kan	this, these	-kaa, -kaas	that, those
------	-------------	-------------	-------------

Examples:

nin	man	ninkan	this man (see 1. above)
buug	book	buuggan	this book (see 2.1. above)
fure	key	furahaa	that key (see 2.2. above)
sanduuq	box	sanduuqaas	that box (see 2.3. above)

b) Feminine

-tan	this, these	-taa, -taas	that, those
------	-------------	-------------	-------------

Examples:

naag	woman	naagtan	this woman (see 1. above)
xarriiq	line	xarriiqdan	this line (see 3.1. above)
gabadh	girl	gabadhaa	that girl (see 3.2. above)
ul	stick	ushaas	that stick (see 3.3. above)

APPENDIX III

A Summary of Somali Noun Classes

A peculiarity of the Somali noun is its change of gender from singular to plural in the majority of noun classes and the phonological changes to the definite article (46). The following notes on noun classes are meant as a general guide to the formation of the plural only insofar as they help to identify elements in the word lists contained in the body of the present work. They are not exhaustive. The definite article is included here only to aid identification and hence the phonological alternances discussed in Appendix II are not invoked.

Class I

Nouns of this class are masculine in both the singular and plural. They are monosyllabic in the singular and form their plural by adding -a plus the final consonant of the noun itself:

<u>Singular</u>		<u>Plural</u>	
buug-ga	book	buugag-ga	books
miis-ka	table	miisas-ka	tables
nin-ka	man	niman-ka (47)	men

Class II

This class contains those nouns of more than one syllable which take the masculine definite article in the singular and the feminine in the plural. The plural is formed by adding -yo to the singular form, except in the case of those nouns which, in the singular, end in b, d, dh, l, n, and r. These nouns double their final consonant before adding -o:

<u>Singular</u>		<u>Plural</u>	
albaab-ka	door	albaabbo-da	doors
muftaax-a	key	muftaaxyo-da	keys

Where a final vowel is short and preceded in the singular by a single consonant, the vowel may be omitted, in which case the contracted plural form will remain in the masculine without the insertion of -y or the doubling of the final consonant:

hilib-ka	meat	hilbo-ha (48)	meats
xadhig-ga	rope	xadhka (49)	ropes

### Class III

This class contains all nouns which take the feminine definite article in the singular except those ending in -o. Their masculine plural is formed by adding -o (or -yo in the case of those singular nouns ending in i):

<u>Singular</u>		<u>Plural</u>	
daaqad-da	window	daaqado-ha	windows
naag-ta	woman	naago-ha	women
mindida	knife	mindiyoh-ha	knives

### Class IV

This class contains those feminine singular nouns ending in -o. The masculine plural is formed by adding -oyin to the singular:

<u>Singular</u>		<u>Plural</u>	
magaalo-da	town	magaalooyin-ka	towns
waddo-da	road	waddooyin-ka	roads

Where a single consonant is preceded by another short vowel, there may be a contraction to -yo:

xero-da	camp	xeryo-ha	camps
qolo-da	tribe	qolyo-ha	tribes

### Class V

Nouns contained in this class are of Arabic origin, some of which retain a broken plural similar to Arabic nouns, although many have a Somali plural form as well. The broken plural is formed by changes in the vowel patterns of the root, while the Somali plural is formed by adding the suffix -o to the singular, as in nouns of Class II:

<u>Singular</u>		<u>Arabic Plural</u>	<u>Somali Plural</u>	
macallin-ka	teacher	macallimiin-ta	macallimmo-da	teachers
markab-ka	ship	maraakiib-ta		ships

### Note:

While it will be seen that most masculine singular nouns become feminine in the plural and vice versa, Somali feminine plurals of masculine singular nouns will take masculine agreements although feminine in form:

Wastaaddadii waa derbigii dhiseen, the masons built the wall.

Likewise Arabic plurals in the feminine which refer to obvious masculine nouns usually take masculine agreements:

Macallimiinta wey Xamar tageen, the teachers went to Mogadishu.

However, in this last example the verb may also be tagtay, the form equating to the feminine plural to agree with macallimiinta.

### Class VI

Contained in this class are masculine singular nouns ending in -e. Their feminine plural is formed by adding the termination -yaal, the final -e of the noun changing to -a (50):

<u>Singular</u>		<u>Plural</u>	
buste-ha	blanket	bustayaa(1)-sha	blankets
aabbe-ha	father	aabbayaa(1)-sha	fathers

Also contained in this class are nouns describing certain occupations and ending in -le (timirle, date seller); certain nouns ending in -i (karraani, clerk); and some ending in -ey (odey, old man).

Note:

Like the Somali plurals of Class V, these masculine singular nouns will take masculine agreements in the plural even though their form is feminine:

Odeyyaashii waa yimaadeen, the old men came.

APPENDIX IV

A Summary of Somali Verbal Classes

With the exception of five strong verbs whose gender and number are determined by Semitic-type prefixes (51), all Somali verbs are composed of a root to which can be added an extension and a termination. The root provides the basic meaning, the extension further modifies it, and the termination reflects time, mood, person, etc. The formation of the Somali verb is explained in general terms in the following four sections, each one concerned with specific root forms - verbal(52), substantival (53), adjectival(54), attributive (55) - and illustrating the root extension forms which may be affixed and which determine the verbal class. The figure in parenthesis after each sub-group indicates the conjugation to which the verbal class belongs (56). Finally, it should be noted that, although more verbal forms are given here than appear in the examples of Somali vocabulary to be found in the various fields of discourse, what follows is merely a summary of such forms and is in no way intended to be a comprehensive examination of the subject.

# 1. Verbal Roots

## 1.1. Root without extension

Verbs in this sub-group have no specific orientation:

beer, cultivate

fur, open

## 1.2. Root + one extension

### 1.2.1. Root + an (1)

To "become" what is denoted in the root of intransitive or passive verbs at 1.1.:

beeran, become cultivated

fur, become opened

### 1.2.2. Root + an (4)(57)

(a) To denote a state of "being" in conjunction with the root of verbs at 1.1. and 1.2.5.:

aammusan, be silent

badan, be large in quantity

(b) To form the passive of transitive verbs at 1.1. and 1.2.3.:

beeran, be cultivated

jaban, be broken

(c) To form the intransitive of transitive verbs at 1.2.3.:

gaaban, be short

### 1.2.3. Root + i (2)

(a) To form the transitive of intransitive verbs at 1.1.,

1.2.1. and 1.2.2.:

buuxi, fill

muuji, show

gaabi, shorten

(b) To form the causative of verbs at 1.1 and 1.2.1.:

aammusi, silence

seexi, cause to go to sleep

To perform an activity or denote a change into a state described by the root of verbs at 1.2.2.(rare)(58):

aammusnaw, become silent

gaabnaw, become short

(a) To perform for one's own benefit an activity denoted in the root of verbs at 1.1.:

beero, cultivate for oneself

keeno, bring for oneself

(b) To form the reflexive of verbs at 1.1. (rare):

maydo, wash oneself

(c) To form the intransitive or passive of verbs at 1.1. or 1.2.3.:

dalo, be born

xusuuso, remember

(d) To form the non-causative of causative verbs at 1.2.3.:

dhaaro, swear an oath

tuko, pray

(e) To form two verbs in which the extension gives no specific orientation:

nogo, return, become

soco, move

1.2.6. Root + ood (3)

To perform for one's own benefit an activity denoted in the root of verbs at 1.1.:

arkood, see for oneself

dilood, kill for oneself

1.2.7. Root + oon (4):

To denote a state of "being" in conjunction with the root of verbs at 1.1. (rare):

gudboon, be incumbent

1.2.8. Root + san (1)

To "become" what is denoted in the root of verbs at 1.1. (rare):

buuxsan, become full

galloocsan, become twisted

1.2.9. Root + san (4)

(a) To denote a state of "being" in conjunction with the root of verbs at 1.1.:

faraxsan, be pleased

suuxsan, be unconscious

(b) To form the passive of transitive verbs at 1.2.3.:

daadsan, be spilled

tirsan, be counted

1.2.10. Root + sii (2):

To cause someone to perform an activity or become something denoted in the root of verbs at 1.1.:

cunsii, make someone eat

yeelsii, make someone do something

1.2.11. Root + so (3)

(a) To perform for one's own benefit an activity denoted in the root of verbs at 1.2.3.:

buuxso, fill for oneself

ururso, collect for oneself

(b) To form the reflexive of verbs at 1.2.3. (rare):

engegso, dry oneself

(c) To form the non-causative of causative verbs at 1.2.3. (rare):

xanuunso, feel pain

(d) To assume a position or state denoted in the root of verbs of a durational aspect at 1.1.:

fadhiiso, sit down

hubao, become certain

To "become" what is denoted in the root of verbs at 1.2.3. (rare):

doorsoon, become changed

garsoon, become hidden

1.2.12. Root + soon (1)

1.2.13. Root + toon (4)

To denote a state of "being" in conjunction with the root of verbs at 1.1. (rare):

digtoon, be alert

### 1.3. Root + two extensions

#### 1.3.1. Root + an + sii (2)

To cause someone to perform an activity denoted in verbs at

1.2.5.(rare):

dooransii, make someone choose

#### 1.3.2. Root + in + sii (2)

To cause someone or something to perform an activity denoted in verbs at 1.2.3. (rare):

gelinsii, make someone put something in

#### 1.3.3. Root + od + sii (2)

To cause someone or something to perform an activity denoted in verbs at 1.2.5. (rare):

socodsii, make someone or something keep moving

#### 1.3.4. Root + oon + aw (3)

To "become" what is denoted in verbs at 1.2.7. (rare):

gudboonaw, become appropriate

#### 1.3.5. Root + sii + so (3)

To make someone perform for one's own benefit an activity denoted in verbs at 1.2.10 (rare):

ciyaarsiiso, make someone play for one's own benefit

cunsiiso, make someone eat for one's own benefit

#### 1.3.6. Root + toon + aw (3)

To "become" what is denoted in verbs at 1.2.13 (rare):

digtoonaw, become alerted

## 2. Substantival Roots

### 2.1. Root + one extension

#### 2.1.1. Root + an (1)

To perform an activity denoted in the root of the verb (rare). The final consonant of the substantival root is sometimes doubled before this extension:

dagaallan, fight (dagaal (n.m.II), fight)

warran, inform (war (n.m.I), news)

#### 2.1.2. Root + ee (2)

To perform an activity denoted in the root of the verb:

biyee, put water in (biyo (n.m.pl.III), water)

xeree, put into an enclosure (xero (n.f.IV), enclosure)

#### 2.1.3. Root + i (2)

To perform an activity denoted in the root of the verb:

hoggaani, lead (hoggaan (n.m.II), halter)

colaadi, wage war (colaad (n.m.II), war)

#### 2.1.4. Root + o (3)

To perform an activity or "become" what is denoted in the root of the verb, usually self-benefactive:

amaaho, borrow (amaah (n.f.III), loan)

xamo, gossip (xan (n.f.III), gossip)

2.1.5. Root + ood (3)

To experience physical sensations or emotions related to the root of the verb:

bukood, become ill (bukaan (n.m.II), illness)

gaajood, feel hungry (gaajo (n.f.IV), hunger)

2.1.6. Root + oon (4)

To denote a state of "being" related to the root of the verb (rare):

nabdoon, be safe (nabad (n.f.III), peace)

2.1.7. Root + ow (1)

(a) To "become" what is denoted in the root of the verb:

biyow, turn into water (biyo (n.m.pl.IV), water)

tuugow, become a thief (tuug (n.m.I), thief)

(b) To develop an illness or defect denoted in the root of the verb:

cadhow, develop scabies (cadho (n.f.IV), scabies)

2.1.8. Root + san (4)

To denote a state of "being" related to the root of the verb:

caasan, be famous (caan (n.m.II), fame)

wanaagsan, be good (wanaag (n.m.II), goodness)

2.1.9. Root + shood (3)

To perform an activity or experience an emotion denoted in the root of the verb (rare):

hawshood, work hard (hawl (n.f.III), work)

xishood, be ashamed (xil (n.m.I), shame)

2.1.10. Root + so (3)

To perform an activity denoted in the root of the verb, usually self-benefactive:

habeynso, spend night away from home (habeyn (n.f.III), night)

neefso, breathe (neef (n.f.III), breath)

2.1.11. Root + soon (4)

To denote a state of "being" related to the root of the verb (rare):

dugsoon, be sheltered (dugsi (n.m.II), shelter)

To perform a reciprocal activity denoted in the root of the verb:

sharatan, wager (sharad (n.m.II), bet)

wacatan, make a pact with one another (wacad (n.m.II), pact)

To experience a sensation or emotion denoted in the root of the verb (rare):

dhibtoon, experience difficulties (dhib (n.f.III), problem)

2.2. Root + two extensions

2.2.1. Root + ay + san (4)

To form the passive of verbs at 2.1.2. with the idea of "being":

gaajaysan, be hungry (gaajo (n.f.IV), hunger)



2.2.2. Root + ay + sii (2)

To cause someone or something  
to perform an activity related  
to the root of the verbs at

2.1.2.:

kooraysii, make someone  
saddle (a horse)  
(koore (n.m.VI),  
saddle)

2.2.3. Root + ay + so (3)

To perform a self-benefactive  
activity related to the root  
of the verb:

biyavso, put water in for  
oneself (biyo  
(n.m.pl.III), water)

rumavso, accept something as  
true for oneself,  
believe  
(run (n.f.III), truth)

2.2.4. Root + san + aw (3)

To perform an activity or denote  
a change of state related to the  
root of verbs at 2.1.8. (rare):

hagaagsanaw, become straight  
(hagaag (n.m.II),  
straightness)

wanaagsanaw, become good  
(wanaag (n.m.II),  
goodness)

2.2.5. Root + tan + sii (2)

To cause someone to participate  
in an activity related to the  
root of verbs at 2.1.12:

ultansii, make someone part-  
icipate in fighting  
with sticks (ul  
(n.f.III), stick)

2.3. Root + three extensions

2.3.1. Root + tan + sii + so (3)

To cause someone, for one's own  
benefit, to participate in an  
activity related to the root of  
verbs at 2.2.5.:

2.3.1. (cont.)

ultansiiso, make someone  
participate in fighting with  
sticks for one's own benefit  
(ul (n.f.III), stick)

3. Adjectival Roots

3.1. Root without extension (4)

To denote qualities or characteristics:

dheer, be long

madow, be black

3.2. Root + one extension

3.2.1. Root + aw (3)

To "become" what is denoted in the root of verbs at 3.1.:

casaw, become red (cas, red)

kululaw, become hot (kulul,  
hot)

3.2.2. Root + ee (2)

To cause someone or something to take on the quality or characteristics denoted in the root of verbs in 3.1.:

fogee, send far away (fog,  
distant)

xumee, cause to be bad (xun,  
bad)

3.2.3. Root + oon (4)

To denote state of "being" in conjunction with the root of verbs at 3.1. (rare):

cusboon, be renewed (cusub,  
new)

3.3. Root + two extensions

3.3.1. Root + ay + san (4)

To form the passive of verbs at 3.2.2. (rare):

bislaysan, be cooked (bisil,  
ripe)

3.3.2. Root + ay + sii (2)

To cause someone to perform an activity denoted in the root of verbs at 3.2.2. (rare):

yaraysii, make someone reduce something in size  
(yar, small)

3.3.3. Root + ay + so (3)

To cause someone or something to take on, for one's own benefit, the quality or characteristic denoted in verbs at 3.2.2.

dhowayso, bring near for oneself  
(dhow, near)

weynayso, cause to become large for oneself  
(weyn, big)

#### 4. Attributive Roots

##### 4.1. Root + one extension

###### 4.1.1. Root + ee (2)

To be in the relative position  
denoted by the root of the verb:

dambee, be behind  
(dambe, behind)

dhexee, be in the middle  
(dhexe, middle)

To produce verbs from attributives ending in -re, the r is doubled before the addition of the verbal extension:

horree, be in front  
(hore, before)

sarree, be on top  
(sare, above)

##### 4.2. Root + two extensions

###### 4.2.1. Root + ay + sii (2)

To cause someone or something to adopt the relative position denoted by verbs at 4.1.1.:

dambaysii, put behind  
(dambe, behind)

horraysii, put in front  
(hore, before)

#### APPENDIX V

##### Derivational, Noun-derived and Verb-derived Affixes (59)

The process of vocabulary building necessarily involves the superimposing of lexical patterns upon new words, thereby establishing a general conformity with already existing semantic groups sharing common elements. One aspect of this process is the use of derivational, noun-derived and verb-derived affixes. Their adoption means that new words can be categorised directly into particular substantival classes which are readily acceptable to the native speaker.

The following list of such affixes has consequently been given here to illustrate their usefulness in Somali. It must be pointed out, however, that the list is by no means exhaustive, containing only those affixes which were observed in the compilation of lexical examples for the present study.

##### 1. Derivational Affixes

- aa: archaic, used to indicate the person or object performing the activity suggested in verbs at 1.1.
- aad: used to form nouns from attributives (60) and adjectives, and verbal nouns from verbs at 1.1.
- aal: rare, used to form verbal nouns from verbs at 1.1.
- aan: used to form verbal nouns from verbs at 1.1., 1.2.2., 1.2.9., 1.2.13., 2.1.11. and 3.1. and may be affixed to adjectives to form nouns.
- aansho: used to form verbal nouns from verbs at 1.1. and 1.2.2.
- ayn: used to form verbal nouns from most verbs at 2.1.2., 3.2.2. and 4.1.1. It may also take the form -eyn.
- ays: used to form verbal nouns from verbs at 2.1.2., 2.1.3. and 2.2.1.

- d: used to form verbal nouns from verbs at 1.2.3., 1.2.5., 1.2.11., 2.1.3., and 2.1.10.
- e: used to indicate the person, profession or object suggested by verbs at 1.1., 1.2.3., 2.1., 2.1.2., 2.1.3., 2.1.8., 3.2.2. and 4.1.1; also used in conjunction with adjectives to form nouns, and may form the nomina agentis when affixed to nouns.
- een: rare, used with verbs at 1.1. to form the nomina agentis.
- id: used to form verbal nouns from verbs at 1.1.
- iin: used to form collective nouns when affixed to singular nouns.
- itaan: used to form verbal nouns from verbs at 1.2.3.
- (i)yad: the Arabic suffix ية [-iyat] with ta marbouta, it is used particularly in conjunction with foreign borrowings (often corresponds to the English -ism).
- le: derived from the verb lahaw, have, it is used in conjunction with nouns to indicate the person possessing the object or quality denoted in the basic element of the word.
- ley: similar to -le above, but used only to indicate abstract concepts.
- n: used to form verbal nouns from verbs at 1.2.3., 1.2.10, 2.1.3., 2.2.2. and 4.2.1.
- nimo: used in conjunction with certain nouns to indicate the inherent abstract qualities or essence behind the basic element of the word (often corresponds to the English -ness).
- s: an alternative to -n above in the formation of verbal nouns from verbs at 1.2.3. and 2.1.3.
- she: rare, used with nouns to indicate the person or profession suggested by the basic element of the word.

- sho: used to form verbal nouns from verbs at 1.2.5. and 1.2.11.
- si: used to form verbal nouns from verbs at 1.1. and 2.1.2.; it may also be affixed to nouns.
- taa: archaic, used to form verbal nouns from verbs at 2.2.3.
- te: used to indicate the person engaged in the activity denoted by verbs at 1.2.5., 2.1.2., 2.2.3., 3.2.2. and 3.3.3.
- to: used to form collective nouns from verbs at 1.2.5., 1.2.11., and 2.1.10.

## 2. Noun-derived Affixes

-darro	n.f.IV	lack, deficiency
-haye	n.m.VI	one who has, possesses
-hays	n.m.II	state of having, possessing
-la'aan	n.f.III	state of being without
-tooyo	n.f.IV	used to indicate the place belonging or assigned to the main element of the word
-yahan	n.m.II	one who is
-yaqaan	n.m.II	one who knows

## 3. Verb-derived Affixes

There exists a number of verb-derived affixes which may occur as masculine nouns usually only in compound words and which may be used to indicate agentive or verbal nouns. All such verb-derived affixes belong to the First Conjugation and their form is identical to that of the imperative. Those to be found in the present work include:

-aammus	be silent
-arag	see
-baac	measure (length)
-baar	seek, investigate
-bax	go out, leave
-beeg	measure
-dar	add
-dhac	fall
-dhal	bear, give birth to
-dhig	place
-dhin	reduce
-dhis	build
-diid	refuse
-doon	want, seek
-fal	do, act
-gab	become incapacitated, be unable
-gal	enter
-gef	err, transgress
-gud	deserve
-gudub	cross
-guur	move away
-jeed	turn
-jiif	lie down

-jir	be
-joog	be in a place, remain
-kaab	support
-kac	rise
-koob	include
-laad	kick
-mar	pass
-naq	return
-qaad	take
-qor	write
-reeb	repulse
-rid	throw, fire
-rog	turn
-roor	run
-sheeg	say, tell
-shub	pour
-sooc	sort, divide into groups
-soor	distribute
-tag	go
-tir	erase
-tus	show
-wad	drive, lead
-xidh	close, contain, tie

# APPENDIX VI

## "Indicators" and relative clauses

1. A unique feature of the Somali language is the use of the indicators baa and waa (61). The former is used to emphasise a noun, whether it be the subject or the object of a sentence; the latter is used to give emphasis to the verb:

Ninkii baa yimid      The man came

Ninkii waa yimid      The man came

In the case of baa, the verb will be in the third person singular even when the subject is in the plural, although the gender of the noun will affect the verb form:

Nimankii baa yimid      The men came

Warqaddii baa timid      The letter came

When the "indicator" waa is used with a masculine subject noun in the plural, the third person plural form of the verb is employed:

Nimankii waa yimaadeen      The man came

If an inanimate feminine plural noun is the subject of the sentence, it will take a form equating to the third person feminine singular (62):

Baabuurta waa timid      The lorries came

In all cases, however, the "indicator" must be included if a complete sentence is to be formed.

2. The absence of these "indicators" means that a relative clause has been formed, and not a complete sentence:

Ninkii yimid      The man who came

Plural nouns in relative clauses take a singular verb form:

Nimankii yimid      The men who came

3. The verbal forms ah, leh and la' reflect the use of the relative clause when preceded by a predicate. They mean who/which is, who/which has and who/which is without/lacks respectively and while being verbal forms in Somali they equate to adjectives in English:

Nin Soomaali ah	a Somali (lit. a man who is a Somali)
Nin garaad leh	an intelligent man (lit. a man who has intelligence)
Nin indha la'	a blind man (lit. a man who is without/lacks eyes)

When the noun qualified is defined (63), the noun linked to ah, leh or la', must also be defined:

Ninka Soomaaliga ah	the Somali (lit. the man who is the Somali)
Ninka garaadka leh	the intelligent man (lit. the man who has the intelligence)
Ninka indhaha la'	the blind man (lit. the man who is without/lacks the eyes).

The above examples are all related to masculine nouns, but the same rules govern feminine nouns, except that where a noun linked to the verbal form ah has a feminine form, it must be used:

Naag geesi ah	a brave woman (lit. a woman who is a brave person)
Lacagta warqadda ah	(the) paper money (lit. the money which is the paper)
Inan caajisad ah	a lazy girl (lit. a girl who is lazy girl) (c.f. inan caajis ah, a boy who is a lazy boy)

## APPENDIX VII

### The co-ordinates 'oo' and 'ee'

1. The co-ordinate 'oo' is used to provide a link between an indefinite noun, already qualified by an adjective, numeral or verbal phrase, and a second adjective or adjectival phrase:

calan cas oo cad	a red and white flag
toban nin oo weyn	ten big men
laba gabadh oo shaqeysa	two working girls

It is also added to defined nouns, personal pronouns, or proper names to indicate an accompanying circumstance:

isagoo meesha jooga	while he was staying at the place
---------------------	-----------------------------------

2. The co-ordinate 'ee' is used to provide a link between a definite noun, already qualified by an adjective or numeral, and a second adjective or adjectival phrase:

calanka cas ee cad	the red and white flag
tobankii nin ee weyn	the ten big men
labadii gabadh ee shaqeysa	the two working girls

# APPENDIX VIII

## The Genitive

There are three ways in Somali to indicate possession. They are:

1. the use of the noun possessor followed by the noun possessed, to which is affixed the appropriate possessive definitive (64):

ninkii gurigiisa	the man's house (lit. the man his house)
naag shuqulkeeda	a woman's work (lit. a woman her work)

2. the use of the definite article -ka, -ta, provided that the possessor is definite:

albaabka guriga	the door of the house (lit. the door the house) (c.f. Arabic باب البيت)
daaqad guriga	a window of the house (lit. a window the house)

3. the use of two undefined nouns together, provided that:

- a) the possessor is a masculine singular noun, or a feminine noun ending in -a or -o (65):

dhal libaax	a lion-cub (lit. an offspring a lion)
gees deero	a gazelle's horn (lit. a horn a gazelle)

- b) when the possessor is a feminine singular noun not ending in -a or -o, the termination -eed is affixed to it:

dhal shiibireed	a fledgling (lit. an offspring a bird)
-----------------	--

In addition, the names of peoples, when used as collective plurals also take the affix -eed:

aqal Soomaaliyeed	a Somali house
-------------------	----------------

- c) when the possessor is a plural noun ending in -o, the termination -ood (66) is affixed to it:

kooreyaal fardood	horses' saddles
-------------------	-----------------

In a few instances, however, certain plural nouns referring to female domestic animals take the termination -aad (67) instead of -ood:

caano halaad	camels' milk
caano lo'aad	cows' milk



APPENDIX IX

Prepositional Particles (68)

1. In Somali, there are four particles, each one capable of expressing a variety of prepositional meanings (69). They are:

- 1.1. ka away, from, off, out, over
- 1.2. ku at, in, on, to, with (by means of)
- 1.3. la together, with (in the company of)
- 1.4. u for (on behalf of), in (manner), to (person),  
towards (in the direction of)

Examples

2. KA

- 2.1. Cali buugga ka qaad      Take the book away from Ali
- 2.2. Buugga miiska ka riix      Push the book off the table
- 2.3. Saliidda dhalada ka shub      Pour the oil out of the bottle
- 2.4. Kaabadda ka tallaab      Cross over the bridge

3. KU

- 3.1. Wuxuu dugsiga ku joogaa      He is at the school
- 3.2. Biyo ku shub      Pour water in it
- 3.3. Baabuurka ku saar      Load it on the lorry
- 3.4. Magaalada ku orod      Run to the town  
(indicating ultimate arrival; c.f. u, 5.4.)
- 3.5. Mindida ku goo      Cut it with the knife

4. LA

- 4.1. La kaalay      Bring it (lit. come with it)
- 4.2. Ninka la soco      Accompany the man  
(lit. travel with the man)

U

- 5.1. Cali buugga u keen      Bring the book for Ali
- 5.2. Caynkaas u samee      Do it that way
- 5.3. Maxamed u tag      Go to Mahamed
- 5.4. Magaalada u orod      Run towards the town  
(indicating direction but not necessarily arrival; c.f. ku, 3.4.)

## NOTES

References made in these notes to published works are listed here merely by author's name with the year of publication and, where applicable, page numbers. Details of the work will be found under the author's name in the bibliographical references.

### PART I: A General View of Vocabulary Expansion

- (1) For an examination of the universals of deep grammar, see J.G. Greenberg (1964)
- (2) W.H. Whitely (1967)
- (3) For an explanation of Somali derivational affixes, see Appendix V.

### PART II: The Lexical Modernisation of Somali

- (4) B.W. Andrzejewski (1962) pp. 177-181
- (5) See A.A. Castagno (1959) p. 371
- (6) B.W. Andrzejewski (1954b)
- (7) For examples of these unofficial systems see Appendix I, 1.3.
- (8) Article 4 (Internal Policy) of the Somali Revolutionary Council's Declaration of 21 October 1969: To constitute with appropriate and adequate measures the basic development of the writing of the Somali language.
- (9) See B.W. Andrzejewski and I.M. Lewis (1964) pp. 37-38, and B.W. Andrzejewski (1971) pp. 262-273.
- (10) See B.W. Andrzejewski and M.H.I. Galaal (1963) Part I, pp. 15-28; Part II, pp. 93-100 and Part III, pp. 190-205. B.W. Andrzejewski and I.M. Lewis (1964); and B.W. Andrzejewski (1972), pp. 252-259. For further information on the types of Somali poetry, see J.W.C. Kirk (1905) pp. 170-183; M. Maino (1913) pp. 44-53 and M. Lawrence (1954).

- (11) B.W. Andrzejewski and Muuse H.I. Galaal (1966) p.29
- (12) See B.W. Andrzejewski (1974) pp. 199-203
- (13) For details of Somali phonology see Appendix I.
- (14) See Somali Ministry of Information and Public Guidance (1974a)
- (15) See note (9) supra.
- (16) Bashir Farah Kahiye (1979)
- (17) It will be noted from the following lists of words that the lexical modernisation of Somali is centred upon the noun but in the case of semantic shift the new meaning of a noun can affect the verb from which it is derived. For example, the verbs aammus and diid, whose basic meanings are be silent and refuse respectively, have the verbal nouns aammus and diidmo. These nouns have undergone a semantic shift to signify abstention and veto and their verbs have also taken on the new meanings. However, it is the examination of nouns which forms the basis of the present study.
- (18) For the purpose of this study, all nouns formed by the addition of a verbal extension and/or derivational affix which cannot stand alone in its own right to a root word are considered to be derived nouns.
- (19) Compounds will be considered, where applicable, under four sub-headings: those involving semantic shift, those involving foreign borrowings, those involving derivation, and simple compounds, those which are combinations of common Somali nouns, which when joined together produce a new meaning. In all cases, the gender of compound words is determined by that of the last element of the compound. Since this is so, each time that a compound word is considered in the following examples, the gender and class of the second noun element will be omitted, except in the case of Class I nouns, since they will already have been given for the compound word itself.

- (20) Included in this section are common Somali words, but which when employed in phrases - whether as nouns in apposition (see Appendix VIII) or in relative clauses (see Appendix VI) - produce new concepts. Also included here are calques and certain instances of semantic shift, borrowings, derivation and compounds. The inclusion of examples of the latter two types under this heading is deliberate for it signifies that such words have been found only in phrase groups. Because they have not been seen individually elsewhere, they have not been included under the sections Semantic shift and Borrowings.
- (21) Somaliland Protectorate, Department of Information (1981)
- (22) See C.R.V. Bell (1953) pp. 3-5
- (23) This fronting or retraction has also been described as vowel harmony. It leads to a differentiation of meaning in only some 20 roots in the whole language. However, for a detailed examination of this aspect of Somali, see L.E. Armstrong (1974) pp. 152-161; B.W. Andrzejewski (1955); and M.H.I. Galaal (1956) pp. 4-11.
- (24) see Note (9) supra
- (25) Abdullahi Hhaji Mahamud and B. Panza (1960)
- (26) B.W. Andrzejewski (1964) p. 106. His transcription includes an additional symbol  $\check{y}$  (not shown in the table) to represent a sound which occurs in Northern Somali similar to y but less tense.
- (27) L.E. Armstrong (1974)
- (28) C.R.V. Bell (1953) pp. 4-7
- (29) Ibrahim Hashi Mahmud (1963)
- (30) M.M. Moreno (1955)
- (31) Muhammad 'Abdi Makahil (A.H. 1351)
- (32) Muuse Haaaji Ismaa'iil Galaal (1974)
- (33) Muuse Haaaji Ismaa'iil Galaal (1956)
- (34) See under Shire Jaamac Axmed (1965)
- (35) See Gosan ka Af Somali ga (1951) and M.M. Moreno (1955) pp. 290-297

(36) Adapted from G.R.V. Bell (1953) pp. 7-9.

(37) The term 'context-sensitive' means that these alternances are not totally automatic. Their occurrence is dependent upon not merely the sequence of sounds but also upon the following conditions:

- a) the grammatical status of the word components in which they occur
- b) the properties of individual roots.

For example, the combination l + t may remain unchanged (c.f. Phonetic Alternance vii, App. I) when the t is the initial consonant of the root extension -tan, indicating reciprocity, (see Appendix IV, 2.1.12., 2.2.5. and 2.3.1.) or of a nominal suffix associated with that extension:

ul	n.f.III	stick
ultan	v.r. + ext.	fight one another with sticks
ficil	n.m.II	ambition, competitiveness
ficiltan	n.m.II	action of competing with one another

Similarly the inactive nominal suffix -ti remains unchanged:

gal + ti = galti n.f.III immigrants (archaic)

In the case of n + vowel = m (see Phonetic Alternance viii, App. I) the operation of this alternance depends simply upon the individual root with which it occurs:

cun (imp. sing.)	eat
cuna (imp. pl.)	eat
tun (imp. sing.)	strike
tuma (imp. pl.)	strike

However, it is beyond the scope of this work to give all the conditions or to enumerate all the individual roots which possess this or that selecting property. The purpose of these examples is to provide a reference framework for an explanation of the composition of newly-formed words. For a further explanation of alternances, see G.R.V. Bell (1953) pp. 44-46; R.C. Abraham (1964) pp. 266-288; and B.W. Andrzejewski (1968).

(38) Phonological Alternances i-iii governing vowels are termed vowel harmony by several authors: see A.W. Schleicher (1892) p.89; L. Reinisch (1903) p.28; L.E. Armstrong (1934) p. 149; and S. Warsema and R.C. Abraham (1951) pp. 396-399.

(39) See also note 37(b).

(40) This particular aspect does not fall within the scope of this study, but, for a detailed examination of tone in Somali, see A. Klingenhoben (1949) pp. 289-303; B.W. Andrzejewski (1954a and 1956); M.H.I. Galaal (1956) pp. 11-14; and R.C. Abraham (1964) pp. 330-331.

(41) A curious feature of Somali is the change of gender which many Somali nouns undergo from the singular to the plural. For details of this, see Appendix II; see also G.R.V. Bell (1953) pp. 13, 15, 19, 46, 63, 64; and R.C. Abraham (1964) pp. 264-266.

(42) There is no such distinction when the noun in question is emphasised by certain particles or is the headword of a dependent clause.

With -kii/-tii, a similar distinction occurs, but it is operated by tone. However, since tone is not represented in the orthography, an explanation of the distinction is not relevant here.

(43) See Phonological Alternance iii at Appendix I, 1.4.

- (44) In the case of a feminine noun ending in -o, this final vowel will change to -a before the suffix -du/-da/-dii (see Phonological Alternance i): ilmo, tear drop      ilmadu, the tear drop  
hooyo, mother      hooyada, the mother  
magaalo, town      magaaladii, the town

(45) See Phonological Alternance vii at Appendix I, 1.4.

(46) See Appendix II.

(47) See Phonological Alternance viii at Appendix I, 1.4.

(48) See Phonological Alternance iv at Appendix I, 1.4.

(49) See Phonological Alternance iv and v at Appendix I, 1.4.

(50) See Phonological Alternance i at Appendix I, 1.4.

(51) For a detailed study of these prefixes, see B.W. Andrzejewski (1975a) pp. 361-376.

(52) Those forms whose basic root is a verb. It should also be noted that the verbal root plus certain extensions particularly -an and -san is used to form verbal adjectives/past participles. The -an ending possesses a basically active meaning while -san provides a passive or causative sense.

(53) Those forms whose basic root is a noun. Just as verbal adjectives may be formed from verbal root plus verbal extension, so substantival adjectives/past participles can be formed from substantival root plus verbal extension(s).

(54) Those forms whose basic root is an adjective. In Somali there is a small number of radical adjectives, i.e. adjectives which are not derived from any other form, substantival or verbal. These include:

<u>adag</u>	hard	<u>kulul</u>	hot
<u>bisil</u>	ripe, cooked	<u>adow</u>	black
<u>cad</u>	white	<u>qabow</u>	cold
<u>cas</u>	red	<u>shilis</u>	fat

<u>culus</u>	heavy	<u>weyn</u>	big
<u>cusub</u>	new	<u>xun</u>	bad
<u>dheer</u>	long	<u>yar</u>	small
<u>dhow</u>	near	<u>yar</u>	few
<u>fog</u>	far		

From these radical adjectives, verbs and other adjectives may be formed by the affixation of verbal extensions. In the case of cad, the final d is doubled before verbal extensions are added to the root.

(55) Those forms whose basic root indicates relative position. Such attributives include:

<u>dambe</u>	behind	<u>kore</u>	above
<u>dhexe</u>	middle	<u>sare</u>	above
<u>hoose</u>	below	<u>shishe</u>	on that side
<u>hore</u>	before	<u>soke</u>	on this side

While possessing some of the characteristics of adjectives, attributives may not take the definite article and may only form Second Conjugation verbs.

(56) The form of all verbs in the following sections will be the imperative second person singular. An examination of the conjugation of Somali verbs falls outside the scope of this present study, but for an explanation, see G.R.V. Bell (1953) and B. Panza (1974).

(57) Certain verbal roots in this conjugation double their final consonant before the suffix -an. Such a form is used:

(a) to describe a state of "being" in conjunction with verbs at 1.1.:

<u>daallan</u>	be tired
<u>diiddan</u>	be opposed

(b) to produce the non-causative of causative verbs at

1.2.3. (rare):

diirran, be warm

(c) to produce the passive of transitive verbs at 1.1.

(rare):

doonnan, be betrothed

(58) Verbal roots ending in -n do not double this consonant with the suffixing of the extension -naw:

degganaw, become settled

diirranaw, become warm

(59) I have chosen to employ the term derivational affixes for those bound morphemes which cannot stand by themselves, noun-derived affixes for those major morphemes which are nouns in their own right, and verb-derived affixes for those verbs which in their root or imperative form may be used as nouns.

(60) See note (55) supra.

(61) The term "indicator" was coined by Bell (see Bell (1953) pp.25-27).

For a detailed study of the "indicator" in Somali, see also A.K. Zholkovsky (1971) Section 12; and B.W. Andrzejewski (1975b) pp. 1-67.

(62) However, if the feminine plural form relates to an animate masculine form, then the verb will be in the third person masculine plural:

Macallimiintii waa yimaadeen, the teachers came

(63) See Appendix II.

(64) I have adopted Bell's term "possessive definitive" (1953, p.69)

to describe the Somali possessives since they combine both the definite article and the possessive adjective:

-kayga, -tayda, my

-kaaga, -taada, your

-kiisa, -tiisa, his, its

-keeda, -teeda, her, its

-keena, -teena, our (inclusive)

-kayaga, -tayada, our (exclusive)

-kiina, -tiina, your

-kooda, -tooda, their (masculine)

-keeda, -teeda, their (feminine)

(65) For details of noun classes, see Appendix III.

(66) The termination -ood is also attached to Class III feminine nouns (see Appendix III) when qualified by a numeral:

shan sariirood, five beds

(67) The termination -aad is also attached to these nouns when qualified by a numeral:

toban halaad, ten she-camels

(68) While the term prepositional particle is used here, it must be explained that in Somali such a particle immediately precedes the verb and not the noun.

(69) For a detailed study of prepositional particles, see B.W. Andrzejewski (1960), pp. 96-108, and A.K. Zholkovsky (1966).

# BIBLIOGRAPHICAL REFERENCES

The works listed below appear under the author's surname in alphabetical order except in the case of Somali and Arab authors whose names are arranged in the accepted order: the given name first, followed by the father's name and then that of the grandfather. Somali names are written in the form in which they appear in the work mentioned.

Where more than one work is attributable to an author, these are listed in their chronological order of publication.

In the case of certain Somali school text-books which are the work of more than one author, the name of the first author given determines alphabetical position in the bibliography, and subsequent authors of the same work are listed in the sequence in which they occur in the book.

The following abbreviations are used:

A.Dh.	Akademiyaha Dhaqanka (Academy of Culture)
P.	Periodical
u/d	undated
W.H.T.S.	Wasaaradda Hiddaha iyo Tacliinta Sare (Ministry of Culture and Higher Education)
W.M.Q.	Wakaaladda Madbacadda Qaranka (National Printing Agency)
W.W.	Wasaaradda Waxbarashada (Ministry of Education)
W.W.B.	Wasaaradda Waxbarashada iyo Barbaarinta (Ministry of Education and Youth Training)
W.W.H.D.	Wasaaradda Warfaafinta iyo Hanuuninta Dadweynaha (Ministry of Information and Public Guidance)
X.M.	Xafiiska Manaahijta (Curriculum Office)

- Aadan Ciise Cali  
Muuse Faarax Cilmi  
Idriis Maxamuud  
Cabdillaahi
- 1976 Fisigis: Fasalka Kowaad, Dugsiyada Sare,  
X.M., W.W.B., W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- Aadan Ciise Cali  
Idriis Maxamuud  
Cabdillaahi  
Cabdillaahi Sh. Ibraahim  
Axmed Yoonis Habbane  
Maxamed Siciid Gees  
Muuse Faarax Cilmi
- u/d Fisigis: Fasalka Labaad, Dugsiga Sare,  
X.M., W.W.B., W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- Aadan Ciise Cali  
Idriis Maxamuud  
Cabdillaahi  
Cabdillaahi Sh. Ibraahim  
Axmed Yoonis Habbane  
Maxamed Siciid Gees  
Muuse Faarax Cilmi
- 1978 Fisigiska, Dugsiyada Sare, Fasalka  
Saddexaad, X.M., W.W.B., W.M.Q.,  
Mogadishu
- 'Abdillahi Hhaji  
Mahhamud  
and Panza, B.
- 1960 Afkayaga Hooyo, Edizioni Arte e  
Cultura, Mogadishu
- Abraham, R.C.
- 1964 Somali-English Dictionary, University  
of London Press, London
- 1967 English-Somali Dictionary, University  
of London Press, London
- Abshir Yuusuf  
Dahir Beegsi  
Cabdullaahi Yuusuf  
Warsame
- u/d Buugga Fisigiska, Dugsiyada Sare,  
Fasalka Afraad, X.M., W.W.B., W.M.Q.,  
Mogadishu
- Alisjahbana, S.T.
- 1976 Language Planning for Modernization: The  
Case of Indonesian and Malaysian, Mouton
- Andrzejewski, B.W.
- 1954a 'Is Somali a tone language?' Proceedings  
of Twenty-third International Congress of  
Orientalists, Cambridge, Royal Asiatic  
Society, London
- 1954b Some problems of Somali orthography,  
The Somaliland Journal
- 1955 The problem of vowel representation in  
the Isaaq dialect of Somali, Bulletin  
of the School of Oriental and African  
Studies, xvii/3
- 1956 Accentual patterns in verbal forms in the  
Isaaq dialect of Somali, Bulletin of the  
School of Oriental and African Studies,  
xvii/1
- 1960 Pronominal and prepositional particles  
in northern Somali, African Language  
Studies, I

- 1961 Notes on the substantive pronouns in  
Somali, African Language Studies, II
- 1962 Speech and writing dichotomy as the  
pattern of multilingualism in the  
Somali Republic, Report of the CCTA/  
CSA Symposium on multilingualism,  
Brazzaville, Commission for Technical  
Cooperation in Africa, Publication  
No. 87
- 1964 The Declensions of Somali Nouns,  
School of Oriental and African Studies,  
University of London
- 1968 Inflectional characteristics of the  
so-called 'weak verbs' in Somali,  
African Language Studies, IX
- 1969 Some observations on hybrid verbs in  
Somali, African Language Studies, X
- 1971 The role of broadcasting in the  
adaptation of the Somali language to  
modern needs, Language Use and Social  
Change, ed. W.H. Whitely, Oxford  
University Press
- 1972 Poetry in Somali Society, Sociolinguistics,  
selected readings, ed. J.B. Fride and  
J. Holmes
- 1974 The introduction of a national orthography  
for Somalia, African Language Studies, XV
- 1975a Verbs with vocalic mutation in Somali and  
their significance for Hamito-Semitic  
comparative studies, Hamito-Semitic:  
Proceedings of a colloquium held by the  
Historical Section of the Linguistics  
Association (Great Britain) at the  
School of Oriental and African Studies  
on 18-20 March 1970, ed. J. and T.  
Bynon, Janua Linguarum, Fractica 200,  
Mouton and Co., The Hague
- 1975b The role of indicator particles in Somali,  
Afroasiatic Linguistics, I, 6, Malibu
- 1975c The rise of written Somali literature,  
African Research and Documentation, 8/9
- 1977a The Somali Academy of Culture, IAI Bulletin:  
African Studies, Notes and News, Supplement  
to Africa, 47, 1



- 1977b Five years of written Somali: A report on progress and prospects, IAI Bulletin: African Studies, Notes and News, Supplement to Africa, 47, 4
- 1978a The development of a national orthography in Somalia and the modernisation of the Somali language, Horn of Africa, I, 3
- 1978b The role of poetic tradition in the modernisation of the Somali language, Heegan (P), 25.9.78, Mogadishu
- 1980a The Implementation of Language Planning in Somalia: A Record of Achievement, Language Planning Newsletter 6, No. 1, Feb. East-West Culture Learning Institute, Honolulu
- 1980b The use of Somali in Mathematics and Science, Afrika und Ubersee, Band LXIII
- Andrzejewski, B.W. and 1964 Somali Poetry: An Introduction, Clarendon Press, Oxford
- Lewis, I.M.
- Andrzejewski, B.W. and 1963 A Somali poetic combat, Journal of Muuse Maa'ji Ismaa'iil African Languages, vol. 2 Galaal
- 1966 The art of the verbal message in Somali Society, Neue Afrikanistische Studien, ed. Johannes Lukas, Hamburger Beiträge zur Afrika-Kunde, Deutsches Institut für Afrika-Forschung
- Andrzejewski, B.W., 1966 Somalia: the writing of Somali, Strelayn, S. and UNESCO, Paris Tubiana, J.
- Aquilina, J. 1959 The Structure of Maltese: a study in mixed grammar and vocabulary, Royal University of Malta
- Armstrong, L.E. 1934 The Phonetic Structure of Somali, Mitteilungen des Seminars für Orientalische Sprachen zu Berlin XXXVII: III [Reprinted in 1964 by Gregg Press, East Ridgewood, New Jersey]
- Aw Jaamac Cumar Ciise 1976 Taariikhdiid Daraawiishta iyo Sayid Maxamed Cabdulle Xasan, A.Dh., W.H.T.S., Mogadishu
- Axmed F. Cali "Idaja" 1973 Macallin la'aan isbar af Somaliga (Somali-Carabi), W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- Axmed F. Cali "Idaja" 1975 The Modern English-Somali Phrase Book, and Cumar Au Nuh W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- Barry, E. 1937 An Elementary Somali Grammar, Tipografia Raimondi, Asmara

- Hashir Farah Kahiye 1979 The role of the Curriculum Office in the introduction of Somali as a medium of instruction in schools, Somali Studies Discussion Group (10 May, 1979), London School of Oriental and African Studies
- Beeston, A.F.L. 1970 The Arabic Language Today, Hutchinson University Library, London
- Bell, C.R.V. 1953 The Somali Language, Longmans, London [Reprinted in 1968 by Gregg International Publishers, Farnborough]
- Bender, M.L. 1975 Language in Ethiopia, Oxford University Press
- Bowen, J.D.
- Cooper, R.L. and Ferguson, C.A.
- Berghold, K. 1899 Somali Studien, Wiener Zeitschrift für die Kunde des Morgenlandes, vol. xiii, pp. 123-198, Vienna
- Bolinger, D. 1968 Aspects of Language, Harcourt, Brace and World, New York
- Bricchetti-Robecchi, L. 1889 Testi Somali, Rendiconti della Real Accademia dei Lincei, Classe di scienze morale, storiche e filologiche, estratto dal vol. V, 2° semestra, fasc. 10 - seduta de 24 novembre 1889, Tipografia della Real Accademia dei Lincei, Rome
- Browning, R. 1969 Medieval and Modern Greek, Hutchinson University Library, London
- Bryan, M.A. 1947 The Distribution of the Semitic and Cushitic Languages of Africa, International African Institute, Oxford University Press
- Cabdi Ibraahim Yoonis u/d Kimistari: Fasalka Kowaad, Dugsiga Sare, Xasan Maxamed Gees X.M., W.W.B., W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- Axmed Xuseen Oomane
- Maxamed Dubbad Dayr
- Ismaaciil Maxamed Sheekh
- Cabdi Muxumud Aamin 1973 Geediga Wadaay: A.Dh., W.H.T.S., Mogadishu
- Cabdillaahi Khaliif Faarax 1974 Casharada Diinta Islaamka, A.Dh., W.H.T.S., Mogadishu

- Cabdulqaadir F. Bootan (ed.) 1976 Qaamuuske Af Soomaliga, A.Dh., W.H.T.S., Mogadishu
- Carzoforo, E. 1935 Elementi di Somali e ki-suahili, Editore Librale Della Real Casa, Milan
- Castagno, A.A. 1959 Somalia - International Conciliation, No. 522, United Nations, New York.
- Cerulli, E. 1918 Canti e proverbi somali nel dialetto degli Habar Auwal, Rivista degli Studi Orientali, vol. vii, pp. 797-836. Rome
- 1919- Somali Songs and Little Texts,  
1920 Journal of the African Society, vol. xix, pp. 135-140, London
- 1931a Nuovi appunti sulle nozioni astronomiche dei Somali, Rivista degli Studi Orientali, vol. xiii, pp. 76-84, Rome
- 1931b Per le Toponomastica della Somalia, Oriente Moderno, vol. xi, Gennaio-Dicembre, pp. 460-467
- 1932 Tentativo indigeno di formare un alfabeto somalo, Oriente Moderno, vol. xii, Gennaio-Dicembre pp. 212-213
- 1947 Quelques notes sur la phonologie somali, Comptes Rendus du Groupe Linguistique d'Etudes à la Sorbonne, pp. 53-57, Paris
- 1957 Somalia, Scritti vari editi ed inediti I, Rome (a cura dell'Amministrazione Fiduciaria Italiana della Somalia)
- 1959 Somalia, Scritti vari editi ed inediti II, Rome (a cura dell'Amministrazione Fiduciaria Italiana della Somalia)
- 1964 Somalia, Scritti vari editi ed inediti III, Rome, Ministero degli Affari Esteri, Direzione delle Relazioni Culturali.
- Corneille, J.P. 1976 La Linguistique Structurale, Larousse
- Crystal, D. 1971 Linguistics, Penguin Books
- Cumar Cusman Maxamed 1975 From written Somali to a rural development campaign, Somali Institute of Development, Administration and Management, Mogadishu

- 1976 Administrative efficiency and administrative language in Somalia, Somali Institute of Development, Administration and Management, Mogadishu
- Czermak, W. 1924a Zur Phonetik des Somali, Wiener Zeitschrift für die Kunde des Morgenlandes, vol. xxxi, pp. 82-102, Vienna
- 1924b Somali Texte im Dialekt der Habar-Ja'lo, Wiener Zeitschrift für die Kunde des Morgenlandes, vol. xxxi, pp. 113-136 Vienna
- Drysdale, J.G.S. 1953 Some Notes on the Somali Language for Beginners (cyclostyled), The Stationery Office, Somaliland Protectorate, Hargeisa
- Entwhistle, W.J. 1953 Aspects of Language, Faber
- Entwhistle, W.J. and Morrison, W.A. 1964 Russian and the Slavonic Languages, Faber
- Faarax M.J. Cawl 1974 Aqoondarro waa u nacab jacayl, A.Dh., W.H.T.S., W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- Fishman, J.A. 1977 Advances in the creation and revision of writing systems, Mouton & Co. The Hague
- Forrest, R.A.D. 1973 The Chinese Language, Faber
- Frel, E.J. 1959 The historical development of the Philippine National Language, Institute of National Language, Manila
- Frankin, V. and Rodman, R. 1974 An Introduction to language, Holt, Rinehart and Winston, New York
- Gosai ka Af Somali ga 1951 Masai kowad ka af Somali ga, duplicated issue, Mogadishu
- Greenberg, J.H. 1964 Universals of Language, Harvard Educational Review 34
- 1966 The Languages of Africa, Mouton & Co., The Hague (for Indiana University, Bloomington)
- Gregersen, E.A. 1977 Language in Africa: An Introductory Survey, Gordon and Breach
- Guiraud, P. 1962 La Sémantique, Presses Universitaires de France

- Homburger, L. 1949 The Negro-African Languages, Routledge & Kegan Paul, London (First English Translation)
- Hony, H.C. 1976 A Turkish-English Dictionary, 2nd Edition, The Clarendon Press, Oxford
- Hunt, J.A. 1951 A General Survey of the Somaliland Protectorate 1944-50, Crown Agents of the Colonies, London
- Hussein M. Adam 1968 A nation in search of a script: The problem of establishing a national orthography for Somali, Makerere, M.A. thesis, University of East Africa
- Ibrāhīm Hāshī Maḥmūd 1963 Assūmāliyatu bilughati - lQur'an
- Isayev, M.I. 1977 National Languages in the USSR: Problems and Solutions, Progress Publishers, Moscow (Translation from Russian by P. Medov)
- Jahn, A. 1906 Somālitexte, gesammelt und übersetzt, Alfred Holder, Vienna
- Jespersen, O. 1954 Language: Its Nature, Development and Origin, Allen & Unwin, London
- Jones, D. 1976 The Phoneme: Its Nature and Use, 3rd edition, Cambridge University Press
- Jones, S. 1934 Somali h and 'e, Maître Phonétique, Jan-March, pp. 8-9, Neuilli
- Kany, C.E. 1960 American-Spanish Semantics, University of California Press
- Keene, A. and Spitler, H. 1966 English-Somali Dictionary, World-wide Missions, Pasadena, California
- King, J.S. 1887 Somali as a written Language, The Indian Antiquary, August pp. 242-243, and October pp. 285-287, Bombay
- Kirk, J.W.C. 1903 Notes on the Somali Language, Henry Frowde, London
- 1905 A Grammar of the Somali Language, Cambridge University Press
- Klingenheben, A. 1949 Ist das Somali eine Tonsprache? Zeitschrift für Phonetik, 3 Jahrgang, Heft 5-6, pp. 289-303
- Kofey, P.F.A. and Der-Houssikian, H. 1978 Language and Linguistic Problems in Africa, Proceedings of 7th Conference on African Linguistics, Hornbeam Press

- Laitin, D.D. 1977 Politics, Language and Thought: The Somali Experience, Chicago University Press
- Langacker, R. 1968 Language and its structure, Harcourt, Brace and World, New York
- Larajasse, de E. 1897 Somali-English and English-Somali Dictionary, Kegan Paul, London
- Larajasse, de E. and Sampont, de, Cyprien 1897 Practical Grammar of the Somali Language, Kegan Paul, London
- Laurence, M. 1954 A tree for poverty, Eagle Press for the Somaliland Protectorate, Nairobi
- Lehmann, W.P. 1962 Historical Linguistics: an introduction, Holt, Rinehart and Winston, New York
- 1975 Language and Linguistics in the People's Republic of China, Texas University Press
- Leslau, W. 1967 Amharic Textbook, Otto Harrassowitz, Wiesbaden
- Levy, R. 1951 The Persian Language, Hutchinson University Library, London
- Lewis, G.L. 1967 Turkish Grammar, Oxford University Press
- Lewis I.M. 1955 Peoples of the Horn of Africa: Somali, Afar and Saho, International African Institute, Oxford University Press
- 1964 The modern history of Somaliland from nation to State, Weidenfeld and Nicolson, London
- 1968 Literacy in a nomadic Society: the Somali case, in Goody, J. (ed.) Literacy in traditional societies, pp. 265-276, Cambridge University Press
- 1980 A modern history of Somalia, Longmans
- Liles, B.L. 1975 Introduction to Linguistics, Prentice-Hall
- Lord, R. 1966 Comparative Linguistics, Teach Yourself Series, The English Universities Press, London
- Lyons, J. 1968 Introduction to theoretical linguistics, Cambridge University Press, London

- Maino, M. 1951a Brevi Notazione di Giddu, Rassegna di Studi Etiopici, vol. x, Gennaio-Dicembre, pp. 99-107, Rome
- 1951b L'alfabeto "Osmania" in Somalia, Rassegna di Studi Etiopici, vol. x, Gennaio-Dicembre, pp. 108-121, Rome
- 1952 I Somali e la loro lingua, Affrica, Anno vii, no. 2, Febbraio, Rome
- 1953a La lingua somala, strumento d'insegnamento professionale, Tipografia Ferrari, Occella & Co. Alessandria (Italy)
- 1953b Il dialetto degli Ašraf di Mogadiscio, Rassegna di Studi Etiopici, vol. xii, Gennaio-Dicembre, pp. 107-138, Rome
- Maino, M. and Yasin 'Isman Kenadid 1953 Terminologia medica e sue voci nella lingua somala, Tipografia Ferrari, Occella & Co. Alessandria (Italy)
- Malmberg, B. 1975 La phonétique, Presses Universitaires de France
- Mann, S.E. 1932 A Short Albanian Grammar, David Nutt
- 1957 English-Albanian Dictionary, Cambridge University Press
- Martinet, A. 1960 Éléments de Linguistique Générale, Paris
- Maxamed Muxamad Cabdillahi Maxamed Sheekh Cabdillahi Cabdi Ibraahim Yoonis u/d 1976 Kimistari: Fasalka Labaad, Dugsiga Sare X.M., W.W.B., W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- Maxamed Mux Cali and Yaasiin Xaaji Maxamuud 1976 Juqraafi, Fasalka Shanaad, X.M., W.M.B., W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- Maxamed Siyaad Barre 1973 Dalkayga iyo Dadkayga, Khudbadihii Madaxweynaha Golaha Sare ee Kacaanka Maxamed Siyaad Barre, W.W.H.D., W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- 1976 Falsafadda Kacaanka Soomaaliyeed, W.W.H.D., W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- Meinhof, C. 1915 An introduction to the study of African Languages, translated by A. Werner, J.M. Dent & Sons

- Moreno, M.M. 1951 Nozioni di Grammatica somala, Università degli Studi di Roma, Scuola Orientale, Rome
- 1955 Il Somalo della Somalia: Grammatica e testi del Benadir, Darod e Dighil, Istituto Poligrafico dello Stato, Rome
- Muhammad 'Abdi Makahil AH1351 Inshā'u- Imakātābātī - l'asriyati fi- llughati - ssūmaliyati, published by Almunshi Ghulam Muhammad, Aden, and printed in Bombay
- Muuse Xaaji Ismaa'iil Galaal 1954 Arabic script for Somali, The Islamic Quarterly, I, No. 2, pp. 114-118, Islamic Cultural Centre, London
- 1956 Miknaad Soomaali, edited with grammatical introduction and notes by B.W. Andrzejewski, Oxford University Press
- Muuse Xuseen Askar, Maxamed Saciid Gees and Cabdillahi Faarax Cabdi 1976 Saynis, Fasalka Shanaad, X.M., W.W.B., W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- O'Conner, J.D. 1974 Phonetics, Penguin Books
- Orano, M. 1931 Elementi per lo studio della lingua somala, Mameeli Hoepli, Editore-Libraio della Real Casa, Milan
- Palermo, G.M. da 1914 Grammatica della lingua somala, Tipografia Francescana, Missione Cattolica, Asmara
- 1915 Dizionario Somalo-Italiano e Italiano-Somalo, Tipografia Francescana, Missione Cattolica, Asmara
- Palmer, F.R. 1976 Semantics: A New Outline, Cambridge University Press
- Panza, B. 1974 Af Soomaali: grammatica della lingua somala con piccolo vocabolario in appendici, Le Monnier, Florence
- Pei, M. 1965 Invitation to linguistics, Allen & Unwin
- Philibert, C. 1976 Petit lexique somali-français, Klincksieck, Paris
- Pirone, M. 1967 La lingua somala e i suoi problemi, Africa xxii, 2, Rome
- Polomé, E.C. and Hill, C.P. 1980 Language in Tanzania, published for the International African Institute by Oxford University Press

- Potter, S. 1957 Modern Linguistics, Deutsch, London
- Ramos, M. 1961 Language Policy in certain newly independent states, Philippine Centre for Language Study, Manila
- Reinisch, L. 1900 Die Somali-Sprache. I: Texte (Südarabische Expedition, Band 1) Alfred Hölder, Kaiserliche Akademie der Wissenschaften, Vienna
- 1902 Die Somali-Sprache II: Wörterbuch, Somali-Deutsch, Deutsch-Somali (Südarabische Expedition) Alfred Hölder, Kaiserliche Akademie der Wissenschaften, Vienna
- 1903 Die Somali-Sprache III: Grammatik (Südarabische Expedition, Band V, Teil 1), Alfred Hölder, Kaiserliche Akademie der Wissenschaften, Vienna
- 1904 Der Dschäbartidialekt der Somalisprache, In Kommission bei Carl Gerold's Sohn, Buchhandler der Kais. Akademie der Wissenschaften, Vienna
- Robins, R.H. 1967 General Linguistics: An introductory study, Longmans, London
- Saeed, J.I. 1980 Language Reform in Somalia: The official adoption of a vernacular, African Languages/Langues Africaines
- Sapir, E. 1963 Language: an introduction to the study of speech, Hart-Davis
- Saussure, F. de 1974 A Course in General Linguistics, Fontana
- Sayyid Hamid Hurreiz 1975 Arabic in the Sudan: current problems and future needs, Language Planning News-Letter 1, No. 4 November, East-West Culture Learning Institute, Honolulu
- Schleicher, A.W. 1892 Die Somali Sprache, Part 1, Berlin
- 1900 Somali Texte - Dr. Schleichers Somali Texte, herausgegeben von Leo Reinisch, Alfred Hölder, Vienna
- Shire Jaamac Axmed 1965 Gabayo, maahmaah iyo sheekooyin yaryar, The National Printers, Mogadishu
- 1973a Rooxaan, A.Dh., W.H.T.S., W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- 1973b Halgankii Noloshu, A.Dh., W.H.T.S., W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- 1976 Naxwaha Af Soomaaliga, A.Dh., W.H.T.S., W.M.Q., Mogadishu

Somali Language Commission  
(Guddiga Af-Soomaaliga)

- 1972 Ereybixinta Af-Soomaaliga ee Hawlaha Wasaaradaha, W.H.T.S., W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- 1972 Akfa, Buugga Kowaad, Wax Dadka Waaweyn, W.W.B., W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- 1972 Buugga Juqraafiga, Fasalka saddexaad ee Dugsiyada Hoose, W.W.B., W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- 1972 Buugga Kowaad Akfa, Dugsiyada Hoose, W.W.B., W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- 1972 Buugga Labaad Akfa, Dugsiyada Hoose, W.W.B., W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- 1972 Buugga Saddexaad Akfa, Dugsiyada Hoose, W.W.B., W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- 1972 Buugga Afraad, Akfa, Dugsiyada Hoose, W.W.B., W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- 1972 Buugga Taariikhda ee Dugsiyada Hoose, W.W.B., W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- 1972 Sayniska Dugsiyada Hoose, Buugga Kowaad, W.W.B., W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- 1972 Sayniska Dugsiyada Hoose, Buugga Labaad, W.W.B., W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- 1972 Sayniska Dugsiyada Hoose, Buugga Saddexaad, W.W.B., W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- 1972 Xisaabta Dugsiyada Hoose, Buugga Kowaad, W.W.B., W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- 1972 Xisaabta Dugsiyada Hoose, Buugga Labaad, W.W.B., W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- 1972 Xisaabta Dugsiyada Hoose, Buugga Saddexaad, W.W.B., W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- 1972 Xisaabta Dugsiyada Hoose, Buugga Afraad, W.W.B., W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- 1973 Aasaaska Naxwaha Af-Soomaaliga, W.H.T.S., W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- 1973 Akfa Buugga Saddexaad, Wax Dadka Waaweyn, W.W.B., W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- 1973 Buugga Caafimaadka iyo Hufnaanta, Dadka Waaweyn, W.W.B., W.M.Q., Mogadishu

- Somaliland Protectorate, 1981 Texts of news bulletins broadcast by Radio Hargeisa in 1974, with an introductory note by B.W. Andrzejewski, held in Library of School of Oriental and African Studies, University of London
- Somali Ministry of Information and Public Guidance (W.W.H.D.) 1968 The Development of Broadcasting in Somalia, W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- 1974a Our Revolutionary Education: its strategy and objectives, W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- 1974b Somalia: Five years of revolutionary progress, W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- 1974c The writing of the Somali language: A great landmark in our revolutionary history, W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- Nov. 1975- Xiddigta Oktoobar, P., W.M.Q., Mogadishu  
May 1981
- Stepanjenko, D.I. and 1969 Abwan urursan Af Soomaali iyo Ruusha, Ruush iyo Af Soomaaliya, Sovetskaya Enjklopediya, Moscow
- Mhamed Haji Osman
- Tauli, V. 1968 Introduction to a theory of language planning, Acta Universitatis Uppsaliensis 6, Studia Philologicae Scandinavicae Uppsaliensis, Uppsalla
- Tiling, M. von 1918/19 Die Vokale des bestimmten Artikels in Somali, Sonderabdruck aus der Zeitschrift für Kolonialsprachen, Band ix, Heft 3, Verlag von Dietrich Reimer [Ernst Vohsen] Berlin
- 1919/20 Adjectiv-Endungen in Somali, Sonderabdruck aus der Zeitschrift für Eingeborenen Sprachen, Band x, Heft 3, Verlag von Dietrich Reimer [Ernst Vohsen], Berlin
- 1922 Die Sprache der Jabarti, mit besonderer Berücksichtigung der Verwandtschaft von Jabarti und Somali: Sonderabdruck aus der Zeitschrift für Eingeborenen Sprachen, Band xii, Heft I (Verlag von Dietrich Reimer [Ernst Vohsen]), Berlin
- 1925 Somali-Texte und Untersuchungen zur Somali-Lautlehre, Verlag von Dietrich Reimer, Berlin
- 1928 Ein Somali-Text von Muhammed Nur, Zeitschrift für Eingeborenen Sprachen, Band viii, Heft 3, pp. 231-233, Berlin

- Trudgill, P. 1974 Sociolinguistics: an introduction, Penguin Books
- Tucker, A.N. and 1956 The Non-Bantu Languages of North-Eastern Africa, Handbook of African Languages, Part III, International African Institute, Oxford University Press
- Bryan, M.A.
- 1966 Linguistic Analyses. The Non-Bantu Languages of North-Eastern Africa, Handbook of African Languages, International African Institute, Oxford University Press
- Ullman, S. 1957 The Principles of Semantics: A linguistic approach to meaning, Blackwell, London
- 1962 Semantics: an introduction to the science of meaning, Blackwell, London
- Warsama, S. and 1951 The Principles of Somali, cyclostyled, second edition, published by R.C. Abraham, London
- Abraham, R.C.
- Werner, A. 1915 The Language Families of Africa, Society for the Promotion of Christian Knowledge, London
- Whataough, J. 1956 Language: a modern synthesis, Seeker & Warburg
- Whitely, W.H. 1967 Loanwords in linguistic descriptions, a case study from Tanzania, East Africa, Approaches in Linguistic Methodology, ed. Ranch and Scott, University of Wisconsin Press
- (ed.) 1974 Language in Kenya, Oxford University Press
- Whorf, B.L. 1956 Language, Thought, Reality: selected writings of B.L. Whorf, ed. J.B. Carroll, M.I.T.
- Xasan Daahir Obsiye 1979 Xisaab, Fasalka Saddaxaad ee Dugsiga Sare, X.M., W.W.B., W.M.Q., Mogadishu
- Xuseen Muxamed (Xannaan)
- Axmed Saciid Diiriye
- Muusa Cabdi Cilmi
- Gali Iid Ibraahim
- Axmed Geedi Maxamuud
- M.E. Bullaleh
- Maxamed Aw. Dadiir
- Cabdi (Gallan)

- Yaasiin Cismaan  
Keenadiid 1976 Qaamuuska Af-Soomaaliga, A.Dh., W.H.T.S.,  
Stabilimenti Tipografici "E. Ariani" e  
"L'Arte della Stampa", Florence
- Zaborski, A. 1967 Arabic loan-words in Somali: Preliminary  
survey, Folia Orientalia, viii,  
pp. 125-175
- Zholkovsky, A.K. 1966 Posledovatel'nosti predlgol'nykh  
chastits v yazyke Somali, Yazyki Afriki,  
(ed. Uspenskij), pp. 143-166, Nauka, Moscow
- 1967 K leksikograficheskomu opisaniju  
somalijsskikh sushchestvitel'nykh,  
Narody Azii i Afriki, I
- 1970 Somalijski rasskaz "Ispuitanie  
proritsatelya" (Opuit porozhdayushchego  
opisaniya), Narody Azii i Afriki I,  
pp. 104-115 and 252-253 (English summary)
- 1971 Sintaksis Somali: glubinnie i poverxnostnie  
strukturi, Izdatel'stvo Nauka, Moscow

WORD INDEX

Because of the use of the definite article in many examples of phrase grouping contained in this work, its affixation to certain words may affect their normal alphabetical sequence.

	<u>Page</u>
aalad	86
aaladda shaqada maskaxda	160
aaladda shaqada wadnaha	160
abaaiguud	236
adkayste	171
adke	81
afargeesle	148
afshareer ogsajiin	160
afti	177
afyaqaan	134
agaasime	234
agaasin	233
ajenda	178
akademiye	113
akar	45
alaab ceedhin	94
alaab xafiis	167
alifle	57
amar	128
amardiidnimo	54
ambalas	153
ameebo	153
ammin	169
ammoniye	80
anteeno	107
antibiyoorig	153

aqoonisweydaarsi	115
aqoonyahan	117, 236
aragti	144
arar	214
argaggixiso	182
aristuqraadi	178
aristuqraadiyad	181
arji	233
arkiifyo	165
armaajo	165
asaydh	80
asli	165
astaamayn	129
astaa	80, 128, 152
astaa weyddiin	134
astaa yaab	134
atan	80
atleetiko	219
ayadiin	153
aydiyooloji	178
ayoon	170
ayoonayn	171
baabiinta xukunka	141
baafiliyoon	86
baahi	86
baaljoog	221
baaqandaraas	94



baaq wicid	111
baar	223
baarashuud	49
baaridda dembiga	141
baaris	115
baarista afafka	134
baasaboor	178
baasuuke	49
bacaadcelin	46
bad birlabeed	174
badbaado	177
badiye	166
badweyn	124
bagteeriyo	153
bah cadceedeed	125
bajad	69
bajin	51, 183
balaasmo	153
baldoos	233
baldooswade	236
balentooloji	113
ballangal	198
bam	49
bambo	49
bandhig	93
bangi	69
bangiga dhiigga	160
bansiin	226

bar tobanle	150
barbaarin	115
barbaaro	144
bardooddame	219
bardooddan	218
barlamaan	178
barolitaariyad	178
baroomiin	153
barwaaqeeeye	45
basgeel	226
bastoolad	49
bateri	226
batrool	226
batroolbax	229
batroolcunis	229
bayoolaji	113
beddelid	108
beel	177
beeraqoon	46
beero	45
beeryaqaan	46
bikaab	226
birisim	170
bistoon	226
bixin	88
biyobeege	172
biyoqabsi	122
biyoshub	124
biyoxidh	47

boolis	138
boorso	113
boostada cirka	111
boosto	107
boroobagandho	178
borootokal	178
borotiin	153
borotoon	170
botaash	80
bujurwaasi	178
bujurwaasiyad	181
bukaanjiif	158
bukaanqaad	158
bukaansocod	156
bulsho	177
bulsho isku mid ah	201
burburiye	234
buug	113
buugagga dugsiyada	118
buugagga qorista	118
buugaghaye	117
buugagsheeg	216
buuglacag	73
caafimaadka qofka	161
caalinka fisikada	124
cabsigelin	188
caddayn	88, 138
calaaamad	152

calanhaye	221
caloosha-u-shaqeyste	54
caqiido	178
carwo ganacsi	94
cashuur	69
cashuur furdadeed	94
cashuur siigal	95
cashuur soogal	95
cashuurta dalka	74
cashuurta moorka	74
cashuur-toos-u-qaad	70
cayaar	218
cayaaryahan	220
cayayaanaqoon	117
cayn	226
ceel	48
cidhif	122
ciid hoosaad	47
ciid tijaabin	47
ciidamada ammaanka	57
ciidamada huwanta	57
ciidamada nabadsugidda	57
ciidamada qalabka sida	57
ciidamada waddaniyiinta	58
ciidan	48
ciidan badda	58
ciidanka cirka	58
ciidanka cirka difaaca	58
ciidanka lugta	58

ciidanka madaaficda	59
ciidmuunadayn	46
cilmi	113
cilmiga cudurrada addimaha	161
cilmiga cudurrada caruurta	161
cilmiga cudurrada haraaga	161
cilmiga cudurrada indaha	162
cilmiga dhakhtarnimada	162
cilmiga dhalashada	162
cinjineer	233
ciqaab	219
ciraqoon	124
cirfiidad	233
cirkasawirka	124
cirmeerid	123
cod	177
codayn	130
codrogid	130
codweyneeye	109
cudurka ameebada	162
cudurka deriskunoolaanta	163
cudursheeg	158
cuf	169
cuf atam	174
culays	80, 169, 218
culays atam	84
cunaqabatayn	188
curiye	82

curiye kaahfal leh	175
cusboonayn	227
cutub	48
daah ogsajiin	163
daarid	227
daawo	153
dab dhan	59
dabadhilif	198
dabaqad	178
dabaqad kadeedan	201
dabaqad mujtamac	201
dabaylhagaaajin	166
dabbabaaad	49
dable	52
dabrid	56
dacaayad	178
dadbin	226
dadiyoxoolatiris	188
dadushaqeyn	189
dadweyne	189
dakhli	69
daxhliga umnadda	74
dalalka sancada leh	202
dalalka soo kordhaya	202
dalbasho	89
daliilhaye	93
dalkucelin	189

dallad	49
dalool	48
dalxiisnimo	223
danab	169
danabdhaliye	173
danayste	183
danaystenimo	183
danjire	189
dawlad	179
dawladaha waaweyn	202
dawladla dabadhilifka ah	202
dawlalnimo	181
dayactir	230
dayaxmadoobaad	123
dayuurad	49
dayuuradda dagaalka	59
dayuuradda dagaalka ee bambadana tuura	59
deeq	113
degganaansho	183
degdejiye	228
degmo	177
dersi	113
deynsadda ummadda	75
dhabbe	48
dhacaan	152
dhaddigayn	130
dhagax ciideed	126
dhagax dab	126
dhagax nuuradeed	126

dhakhtar	153
dhaldliirin	156
dhambaal	214
dhammaad	169
dhaqaalaweyne	72
dhaqaalayare	72
dhaqaale	69
dhaqancelin	139
dhaqdhaqaaq	48, 177
dhar cayaareed	222
dhar dagaal	59
dhar shaqaale	238
dhawaaq	128
dheef	69, 152
dheellitir	73
dheellitirka ganacsiga dibbedda	75
dheeraadka shaqeynta	238
dhegeystaa	154
dhegeyste	108
dhexdhexaadnimo	183
dhexeeye	219
dhexroor	150
dhibic	128, 218
dhibic hakad	134
dhidib	144
dhiigbax	158
dhiigdarro	159
dhiigkac	159
dhiigkushub	159

dhiigmiiradnimo	189
dhiigsiin	156
dhimid	89
dhimidda hubka halista ah	203
dhooфин	89
dhooфиye	89
dhulbare	125
dhuldhaqasho	46
dhuldurugsi	190
dhulgariir	125
dhulgoosato	190
dhulgoosi	190
dhulhays	190
dhuljiidad	172
dhultacbe	190
dhuumoyaqaan	237
dhuun	48, 80
dhuun habsasho	84
dibloomaasi	179
dibloomaasiin	181
dibloomaasiyad	181
dibudhacsanaan	190
dibuifiirin	115
dibusocodnimo	191
dibutababar	117
difaac	49
digrii	122
diidmo	177
diidoley	130

diidoleyda farriinleyda	135
diiwaangelin	116
diiwaanka shirkadaha	95
dimograadi	179
dimograadinimo	181
dinaamiko	170
dinaamiko kul	175
dire	108
dirtiris	153
distuur	179
dokumenti	179
doorasho	183
doorsoome	146
dufan	152
dugsi	113
dugsiga dhexe	118
dugsiga hoose	118
dugsiga sare	118
duleed	144
dulnaarid	54
durdurka dhiigga	163
durugsi	184
duugow	69
duuliyanimo	52
duuliye	52
dux	152

eber	144
eletrodi	170
eraybixin	132
faanijar	165
faaqidaad	214
fagaare	113
fal	128
fale	129
falgai	83
falkaab	132
falsafad	114
fansaar	144
farasyon	145
farbarasho	116
farmashiye	153
farriinley	130
farsamayn	87
farsamo	86
farsamo-aqoon	90
farsamoyayaan	235
fasal	114
fashiiste	179
fashiistenimo	181
fayl	165
fayruus	153
feeraarin	52

ferijiteer	153
fiiro	113
fiise	179
fiise dalkugal	203
fiise dalkumar	203
fiise gudub ah	203
fiitamiin	153
fiitamiindarro	155
finaal	219
firikuwansi	107
fisigis	114, 170
fisigis cusub	175
fisiko	114, 170
fisyoolojiye	153
fonoolojiye	129
fooltej	170
fooltis	170
foom	165
fooras	49
fosfaad	80
fosfoor	80
fotostaat	165
furfurid	146
fuyuul	226
gaadiid	226
gaas	48
gaashaan	218
gaashaandhig	56

gaashaanle	52
gaashaanle dhexe	59
gaashaanle duuliye	60
gaashaanle sare	60
gaashaanqaad	56
gacan	144
gacangarnaydh	53
gacanyare	191
gadaal	128
gadaalraace	133
gal	165
gal xirmo	167
galaas	49
galoob	122
ganacsi	70
ganacsi daahsoon	95
ganacsi deggan	95
ganacsi kooban	96
ganacsi muuqda	96
ganacsidhac	91
gantaal	48
gantaallada nukliyeerka	60
garaaf	145
garaash	226
geeresh	226
gargaar degdeg ah	163
gariir	169
gariir ilays	175

gariirro	226
garnayuh	49
garoon	49, 219
garoonshid	49
garsoor	140
garsoore	139
garyaqaan	140
geedo-aqoon	117
geeskalaad	221
gegida dayuuradaha	225
gelin	89
go'aan	138
gobannimadoon	198
gobannimadoonis	191
gobol	177
gogoldhig	216
golaha ammanka	204
golaha ganacsiga	96
golaha wasiirrada	204
gole	177
goobta korontada	175
goof	45
gool	219
goolhaye	220
goolkalaad	220
goosato	184
guddi	177
guddiga fulinta	119

guddiga joogtada ah	204
guddiga qandaraaska	96
guddoomiye	184
guddoon	177
gujis	52
gumeysi	184
gumeysi cusub	204
gumeysi maskaxeed	204
gumeysinimo	184
gumeysitir	191
gumeyste	184
guriga hiddaha	119
guriga korontada	225
guuto	48
haan	226
hab	128
habka biyoxidhka	230
habka dagaalka	60
habka dhaqaalaha	75
habka dhaqanka dhaqaalaha	205
habka ganacsiga	96
habka huridda	230
habka idaacadda	111
habka laba qoraalka ah	76
habka mideynta xisaabaadka	76
habka qaboojiska	230

hadal	128
hadalka tooska	135
hagaajin	214
hagaajiye	214
hakad	128
halgaanka heerarka	205
hannaanka waxbarashada	119
hantibursasho	191
hantigoosad	192
hantiwadaag	198
hantiwadaagga cilmiga ku dhisan	205
hawl	169
hawldiid	237
hawlgab	237
hawlgaran	56
hawo	169
hawo sare	175
hawo-aqoon	125
hawoqaboojiye	166
haydarojiin	81
heegan	218
heer	177
heerka nolosha	205
heerka qiimaha	97
heerkulbeeg	174
hektar	45
heshiiska ganacsiga	97
hir	107



hirarka dhaadheer	111
hirarka dhexe	111
hirarka gaagaaban	112
hirbaac	109
hoggaamin	180
hoggaamiye	51
hoggaan	48, 177
hoor	80
hooseeye	146
hoos-u-dhigid	54
hordhac	216
horin	48
horjoog	221
horjooge	133
hormaris	71
hormo	144
horrayn	185
horumarin	192
horumarinta ganacsiga	97
horusocodnimo	192
hubka culus	60
hubka halista ah	60
hubka iswada	61
hufnaan	152
hurid	228

idaacad	107
idoloojiyo	179
iidheh	110
il	226
il dhuuban	231
imberiyaali	179
imberiyaaliyad	182
injineer	233
inqilaab	179
inqilaab dhicisoobey	206
irbad	152
isarag	237
isbahaysi	192
isballaadhin	192
isbarbardhig	134
isbeerbaadh	226
isbeerti	233
isbitaal	153
isbitaalyare	158
isboorti	219
isdhin	93
isdhinka ganacsiga	97
isgarabsi	193
isir	144, 152
isjir	56
iskaashad	193
iskaashato	193
iskafatoor	233
iskafatoorwade	236
iskahorjeed	108

iskawarramid	215
iskawaxuqabso	193
iskool	114
iskoor	49
isku-agaasimid	156
iskudar	199
iskudhis	83
iskudhufasho	148
iskudulnoolaan	193
iskufilnaansho	194
iskugudbin	220
iskujir	83
iskukalsoonaan	194
iskukornoolaan	194
iskunoolaan	194
iskuwareegsi	123
iskuxidhnaan	195
iskuxoqid	172
islaqabasho	195
islaweynaan	195
isle'eg	148
isle'ekaan	148
ismaamul	187
isqaadsiin	157
isreebid	221
isrog	125
istaatistiko	145
istaraatiiji	49
istaraatiijiyad	51
istarliin	69

istarontiyam	81
isteensal	165
isticmaar	179
isuduwid	157
isugayn	148
isuqaris	55
isuqaybin	149
isuqiyaas	150
iswaaafajinta siyaasadaha	206
isweydaarin	149
Jaaj	227
Jaalle	177
Jaamacad	114
Jab	144
Jab tobanle	151
Jabhad	179
Jago	233
Jalxad	226
Jamac	128
Jamiciyad	179
Jamiciyadda quruumaha midoobey	206
Jamhuuriyad	179
Jasiirad	122
Jeeg	69
Jeegaan	169
Jeegaan birlab-danabeed	175
Jeegga socotada	76
Jeel	138

jeermi	153
jeermireeb	155
jeermitire	158
jeneestiko	219
jeoloji	114
jid	169
jidadka naxwaha	135
jiib	227
jinicsi	113, 152, 218
jomiteri	145
joofisig	114
joogsi	128
joojin	185
joojinta dabka	61
joojinta fulinta	141
joojiye	228
joojiye gacmeed	231
joojiye neefeed	231
juqraafi	114, 122
ka-aamuus	199
kaahfal	174
kaalsiyam	81
kaankaro	153
kaarbohaydarayto	153
kaarboon	81
kaarto	122
kaartogaraafiyo	122

kabixin	91
kabsool	153
kacaan	185
kacaandiid	199
kacaandiidnimo	195
kacaanka warshadaha	207
kacaannimo	185
kadhexeeye	149
kadhimid	91
kaftoon	80
kahortag	159
kahortagga dembiga	142
kalaasifikatoore	165
kalabax	83
kaladhig	83
kalagoyn	149
kalamid	150
kalasarreyn	195
kalasocoid	196
kaloori	153
kambani	86
kanaal	122
kaqaadid	196
kaqaybgal	199
karantiin	154
kasaarid	55, 196
kataloogo	86
kawarramid	91
kawarramidda sancada	97
kayd	69, 218

kaymayn	45
kaynaan	169
kayngoy	47
keebka ammaanka	61
keenid	223
keli	128
kelitalis	187
khaanad	145
khabiiir	233
khamiir	154
kharash	69
kharashdhaafin	73
kharashka dhabta ah	77
kharbudad	50
khasaare	50
khudbad	179
kiciye	228
kiilo	145
kiilomitir	145
kiilowaad	170
kiintal	45
kimiko	81, 114
kimisteri	81, 114
kiriir	152
kobar	81
kolej	114
kolejka sancobarashada	119
kolmo	128
kombiyuutar	233
konferens	114

kongares	179
kontarabaan	138
konto	69
konteroool	179
koobid	131
koox	128, 218
koronto	170
korontofidin	224
korontoroge	171
korontoyaqaan	235
koroom	81
korsocod	71
korsocod culus	77
korsocod fudud	77
korudhig	93
koruqaade	167
kudhufasho	133
kudhufte	149
kulan	144
kulan cilmi	120
kulgudbiye	173
kulliyad	114
kulliyadda waxbarashada	120
kulmiska dabka	61
kuqaybsane	196
kuqaybsanaha arrimaha dhaqanka	207
kursi	179
kursi wareega	167
kushaqaysiin	196
kushineeto	227

laad galloocan	222
laad qummaati ah	222
laan	113, 177
laanta cashuurta berriga	77
laba dhibcood	135
laba kolmood	135
labayn	131
lacag adag	77
lacaghaye	73
lacagmaamulid	71
lafale	133
lakab	122
lambar	145
lambar dhan	151
lataliyaha ganacsiga	207
lataliye	197
latashi	199
laxaadroob	125
layeele	133
leeb	169
leniinisim	179
leniiniyad	182
lingah	226
logardam	145
loollanka hubka	208
luqad	129
maab	122
maal	69

maalceedhin	90
maalgelin	72
maaliyad	69
maalqabeen	187
maalqabeen dhexe	208
maalqabeen yar	208
maalsoodejin	93
maamul	178
maamule	180
maarkisim	179
maarkisiyad	182
maatar	81
macaash	233
macallin	114
madaafic	50
madaar	223
madaxtooyo	199
madaxweyne	197
madbacad	214
madfac	50
magaalomadax	224
magaaloqorsheeye	223
magaaloqorsheyn	223
magaasiin	50
magac	128
magac dhaddig	136
magac gaar	136
magac guud	136
magac kadin ah	136

magac lab	136
magac qarsoon	136
magacuyaal	130
magacuyaal dad	136
magacuyaal noqod	137
magacuyaal su'aaleed	137
magangal	199
magnisiyam	81
magnit	170
mahadnaq	216
makaanig	233
makarafoon	107
makhaasir	86
makiinad	86
makiinadays	88
makiinadda farta	168
makiinadda masawirka	168
makiinadda qoraalka	168
makiinadda telikiska	168
makiinadqore	235
maktabad	114
manganiis	81
manhaj	114
manifesti	86
maqaal	214
markab	50
markabka dagaalka	62
markabka qaada dayuuradaha	62

markabka quusa biyaha hoostooda	62
mashruuc	86
matoor	227
matxaf	114
mawjad	107
maxkamad	138
maxkamadda degmada	142
maxkamadda dhexe	142
maxkamadda rafcaanka	142
maxkammada sare	143
mayl	145
meeleeye	131
meeris	146
midabkalasocid	199
midabtakoór	200
midayn	185
midiidin	178
midiidinaysiin	185
midnimo	185
migawaad	170
miilimitir	145
miinada dabinka	63
miinada lidka dabbaabadeed	63
miinada lidka dadka	63
miinada lidka maraakiibta	63
miinada lidka taangiga	64
miinada waqtiga	64
miinawaar	50
miino	50

miinodhige	55
miinoxaaqe	55
miisaan	69
miisaaniyad	69
miisaaniyaddhig	72
miisaanka maaliyadda	78
mikoroskoob	154
mikroob	154
mile	82
mindiiil	152
molikiyuul	81
monobooli	86
moodulaashoon	107
moollo	227
mooris	107
mooto	227
mudnaan	154
mug	170
mujtamac	179
murkuuri	81
mushaar	233
mushaar duuban	238
mushaar saafi ah	238
muujin	215
muunad badeecaadeed	98
muuq	80

naanays	80
nabaadguur	47
nabaalam	50
nabaddiid	200
nabadsugid	55
nafaqo	152
nafaqodarro	155
nal qaanso	176
nalbixin	224
naqad	87
naqadsoogal	94
naqshadaha dhismaha	98
naqshadyaqaan	237
nasasho	218
naxwe	114, 129
naytaroojiin	81
neef	80
neefsiin	157
neefta wahsiga	84
nidaamka guud ee xisaabaadka	78
nidaamka lacagta	78
niikel	81
niyuutaroon	170
nololaqoon	117
nololwarran	237
nuqul	165
nuugid	82

ogaysiin	109
ogaysiinta diridda	98
ogaysiinta lacagbixinta	98
ogsajiin	81
ogsaydh	81
olole	178
ooga-aqoon	159
oomaarbaxsi	83
ordinayt	145
orodbeege	229
ortografiyo	129
oryantayshan	179
qaab sugan	151
qaabka dhismaha mujtamaca	208
qaabka waxwadatacabka iyo waxwadalahaanshada	209
qaanso	129
qaboojis biyood	231
qaboojis dabayleed	231
qaboojiye	154
qalinjebin	116
qalliin	152
qallooca ilayska	176
qarxiye	53
qayb	218
qaybin	215
qaybiye	147, 228
qeexid	82, 90
qiimaysta mashruuca	99
qiime beddelma	99
qiime caddaysan	99

qiime go'an	99
qiime jooga	100
qiime mideed	100
qiime saldhig ah	100
qiime soo socda	100
qiime xoolamada	100
qiimedhac	74
qiiqa ilmada keena	64
qiiqa indhaha	64
qiiqsaare	229
qiyaasdhin	94
qodob	129
qofkahadal	217
qofkawarran	237
qolka bandhigga	101
qolka qalliinta	163
qoqob	144
qoqobka ganacsiga	101
qorkasoodejin	91
qorraxkusidane	123
qorraxmadoobaad	124
qorshaynta qoyska	163
qoton	48
qulqul danab	176
qunbulad	50
qunbuladda durriyadda	65
qunbuladda gacanta	65
qunsul	179
qunsuliyad	182
quruursooc	47



raadar	107
raadiye	107
raadiyow	107
raasammaal	70
raashin	50
radiyeetar	227
rafcaan	138
ra'iisul wasaare	180
rasiidh	87
riig	87
riishad	50
riishadda qarxiyaha	65
riikoor	219
rimoor	227
rogaalka lacagta	101
roket	50
roobqiyaas	174
rugta baarista	84
rugta ganacsiga	101
rugta taliska	65
saamigal	150
saboolnimo	186
saddexagal	147
safaarad	180
sahamiye	234

sahan	86
sahan bilaw	101
sahan farsamo	102
sahan ganacsi	102
sahanka dhulgariirka	126
sahyuuniyad	182
sal	129, 144
saldhig	56
saldhigga booliska	143
saldhigga dayaxgacneedka	112
salfar	81
saliid ceedhin	102
saliidbax	230
sallax	144
sambaal	87
sanco	86
sanco culus	102
sanco fudud	102
sanco khafiif ah	102
sanco-aqoon	90
tsanduug	70
sannad waxbarasho	120
sarkaal	50
sarkaalka hoose	65
sarkaalka kuxigeenka	66
sarkaalka sare	66
sarkaalka xilwadaha	66
sarreeye	53, 147
sarreeye gaas	66

sarreeye guud	66
sarreeye guuto	66
sarrif	70
sarrif shisheeye	78
sarrifdhac	71
sawaariikhda lidka dayuuradaha	67
sawaariikhda lidka taangiyada	67
saxar	170
saxeeye	173
saynis	115
sayruukh	50
sentimitir	146
serked	170
shaqaalaha dawladda	209
shaqada ciidanka	67
shaqo marmar ah	239
shaqogacmeed	235
shaqojoojin	235
shaqola' aan	238
shaqoyaraan	236
sharci	138
sharcidarro	139
sharcidejin	139
shardiley	131
shaybaar	84
shebeg	218
shentraal	107
shifti	233
shilindaar	227

shir cilmi	120
shirkad	87
shirkad caami ah	102
shirweyne	197
shoobero	233
shoog	154
shucaac	50
shucaaca halista ah	67
shufeer	227
shurug	86
shuruginimo	87
shuuci	180
shuucinimo	182
sicir loellan	103
sicirgeyn	92
sicirka jimlada	103
sicirka suuqa	103
sicirka warshadda	103
signaal	107
siidoolnimo	197
siihaye	200
silikoon	81
siminaar	115
sime	173
sink	81
sinnaanta mujtamaca	209
siyaasad	180
siyaasadda isballaadhinta	210
siyaasadda nabadkunoolaanshada	210

socdaal	170
sodiyam	81
soobandhig	217
soodejiye	92
soodoolnimo	197
soogelin	92
soosaarid	92
sugidley	131
summad	80
summadda ganacsiga	103
summadayn	186
sun	152
sunindhood	57
suuq	87
suuqgelin	93
suuqgeyn	93
suuragelin	92
suuxin	154
suuxiye	155
taageerid	186
taangi	50
taanis	219
taanjenti	146
taargo	227
taariikh	115
tababar dhaqso ah	120
tababarka macalliminta	121

tababarle	234
tacab	69
tacabdhal	94
tacabweynaha guriga	79
tacabweynaha ummadda	79
taccliinta sare	121
talis	53, 186
taliswadaag	187
tamar	170
tamar socod	176
tamariye	171
taransistar	107
tarantirid	157
tareen	227
tartame	87, 234
tartan	86
tartangal	90
tartanka hubka	210
tawrad	180
tawraddiid	187
tekmooloji	87
tekmoolojiyad	88
teleberentar	107
telefisyoona	107
telefoon	107
telefoonayste	108
telefoonaystenimo	108
telefoonniiste	107
telekis	107

tendar	87
tijaabo	138
tilmaame	131
tiraab	113
tirakoob	200
tirignoomiteri	146
tiro atam	85
tiro buuxda	151
tiro dhiman	151
tiro idil	151
tix	113
tolayn	90
toobin	153
tusaalayska sicirka	104
tuse	147
tusid	215
tuute	219
ul taanis	222
urur	48, 145, 178, 233
ururka shaqaalaha	239
usha xiriirka	232
uumiyoobid	82

waax	145
wadla lugeed	225
wadahadal	200
wadajir	200
wadajirka dalka	210
wadatashi	200
waddani	50
wadhfiye	172
wadnedoorin	159
wafdi	180
wakiil	87
waqti	129
war cad	210
waraaq	180
waraaq murtiyeed	211
warqadaha aqoonsiga	211
warbixin	110
wareeg	145
warfaafin	110
wargeys	216
warisgaarsiin	110
warisgaarsiinta dayaxgacmeedka	112
wariye	216
warka shaqofulinta	104
warqad	87
warqadda dhakhtarka	164
warqadda kalsoonaanta	104
warqadda rarka	105

warshad	87
warshadayn	88
warshadda safaynta saliidda	105
wasaarad	180
wasakhqaad	224
wasakhtire	158
wasiir	180
waxbarashada khasabka	121
waxbarasho	117
waxsoosaarid	92
waxwadaqabsi	198
weerarcelin	56
weerare	221
weeraryahan	221
weji	80
weyddiinley	132
weyneeye	155
xaaladda degdegga ah	211
xaashida aqoonsiga	211
xaashida caddaynta aslinimada	105
xaashida haraaga	106
xaashida lacagbixinta	79
xaashida sicirka ganacsiga	106
xabag	165
xabbad	50
xabbadayn	51

xadgudub	200
xafiis	165
xagal	145
xagal farraar	126
xaglogooye	150
xambaarada gantaalka	68
xaq	138
xaqusinnaan	140
xaraf	129
xarar	86
xarriiqaha dhigaha	126
xarriiqaha galoobka	127
xarriiqaha loolka	127
xarun	113
xarunta waxbarashada dadka waaweyn	121
xatooyo	138
xawaare	170
xeeldheere	236
xeergeef	140
xeerka nolosha	205
xeeryaqaan	141
xero	49
xidid	145, 153
xigasho	215
xir miinaysan	68
xiriirka dibloomasiga ah	212
xiriiriye	132
xiriirnaq	201
xirmatus	166

xirmo	165
xisaab	70, 115, 146
xisaabaad	70
xisaabcelin	73
xisaabfal	147
xisaabhaye	71
xisaabiye	70
xisaabsimid	73
xisbi	180
xisbiga qunyarsocodka ah	212
xisbiga taliska gacanta ku haysa	212
xisbiga xorta ah	213
xoghaye	201
xoghayaha guud	213
xoog	49, 170
xoog faras	232
xoogga dalka Soomaaliyeed	68
xoogsato	186
xoojiye	109
xoolamadax	74
xorayn	186
xubin	129, 178, 218
xubinnimo	180
xubno-aqoon	159
xuddumaysiin	186
xuddun	145
xukun	138

xukundiid	201
xuquuq	138
xuquuqda mujtamaca	213
xuruuf	129
xusuusqor	167
xuub	165
yeele	132
yuraaniyam	81